cisco.



Cisco and Hitachi Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure as Direct Attached Storage

Deployment Guide for Cisco and Hitachi Converged Infrastructure with Cisco UCS Blade Servers, Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 Switches, and Hitachi VSP G370 with vSphere 6.5 and vSphere 6.7 Connected as Direct Attached Storage

Last Updated: June 20, 2019



About the Cisco Validated Design Program

The Cisco Validated Design (CVD) program consists of systems and solutions designed, tested, and documented to facilitate faster, more reliable, and more predictable customer deployments. For more information, go to:

http://www.cisco.com/go/designzone.

ALL DESIGNS, SPECIFICATIONS, STATEMENTS, INFORMATION, AND RECOMMENDATIONS (COLLECTIVELY, "DESIGNS") IN THIS MANUAL ARE PRESENTED "AS IS," WITH ALL FAULTS. CISCO AND ITS SUPPLIERS DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, THE WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OR ARISING FROM A COURSE OF DEALING, USAGE, OR TRADE PRACTICE. IN NO EVENT SHALL CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, LOST PROFITS OR LOSS OR DAMAGE TO DATA ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE DESIGNS, EVEN IF CISCO OR ITS SUPPLIERS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

THE DESIGNS ARE SUBJECT TO CHANGE WITHOUT NOTICE. USERS ARE SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR THEIR APPLICATION OF THE DESIGNS. THE DESIGNS DO NOT CONSTITUTE THE TECHNICAL OR OTHER PROFESSIONAL ADVICE OF CISCO, ITS SUPPLIERS OR PARTNERS. USERS SHOULD CONSULT THEIR OWN TECHNICAL ADVISORS BEFORE IMPLEMENTING THE DESIGNS. RESULTS MAY VARY DEPENDING ON FACTORS NOT TESTED BY CISCO.

CCDE, CCENT, Cisco Eos, Cisco Lumin, Cisco Nexus, Cisco StadiumVision, Cisco TelePresence, Cisco WebEx, the Cisco logo, DCE, and Welcome to the Human Network are trademarks; Changing the Way We Work, Live, Play, and Learn and Cisco Store are service marks; and Access Registrar, Aironet, AsyncOS, Bringing the Meeting To You, Catalyst, CCDA, CCDP, CCIE, CCIP, CCNA, CCNP, CCSP, CCVP, Cisco, the Cisco Certified Internetwork Expert logo, Cisco IOS, Cisco Press, Cisco Systems, Cisco Systems Capital, the Cisco Systems logo, Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS), Cisco UCS B-Series Blade Servers, Cisco UCS C-Series Rack Servers, Cisco UCS S-Series Storage Servers, Cisco UCS Manager, Cisco UCS Management Software, Cisco Unified Fabric, Cisco Application Centric Infrastructure, Cisco Nexus 9000 Series, Cisco Nexus 7000 Series. Cisco Prime Data Center Network Manager, Cisco NX-OS Software, Cisco MDS Series, Cisco Unity, Collaboration Without Limitation, EtherFast, EtherSwitch, Event Center, Fast Step, Follow Me Browsing, FormShare, GigaDrive, HomeLink, Internet Quotient, IOS, iPhone, iQuick Study, LightStream, Linksys, MediaTone, MeetingPlace, MeetingPlace Chime Sound, MGX, Networkers, Networking Academy, Network Registrar, PCNow, PIX, PowerPanels, ProConnect, ScriptShare, SenderBase, SMARTnet, Spectrum Expert, StackWise, The Fastest Way to Increase Your Internet Quotient, TransPath, WebEx, and the WebEx logo are registered trademarks of Cisco Systems, Inc. and/or its affiliates in the United States and certain other countries.

All other trademarks mentioned in this document or website are the property of their respective owners. The use of the word partner does not imply a partnership relationship between Cisco and any other company. (o8o9R)

© 2019 Cisco Systems, Inc. All rights reserved.

Table of Contents

Executive Summary	
Solution Overview	7
Introduction	7
Audience	7
Purpose of this Document	7
Solution Design	
Architecture	
Deployment Hardware and Software	
Hardware and Software Versions	
Configuration Guidelines	
Physical Cabling	13
Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration	
Physical Connectivity	
Initial Nexus Configuration Dialogue	
Enable Features and Settings	
Create VLANs	
Add Individual Port Descriptions for Troubleshooting	19
Create the vPC Domain	
Configure Port Channel Member Interfaces	
Configure Virtual Port Channels	
Create Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) Switched Virtual Interfaces (SVI)	21
Set Global Configurations	23
Configure Fibre Channel Ports on Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform	
Cisco UCS Compute Configuration	
Physical Connectivity	
Upgrade Cisco UCS Manager Software to Version 4.0(2b)	
Cisco UCS Base Configuration	
Cisco UCS Manager Setup	
Log into Cisco UCS Manager	
Anonymous Reporting	
Place Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects in Fiber Channel Switching Mode	
Synchronize Cisco UCS to NTP	
Configure Cisco UCS Servers	
Edit Chassis Discovery Policy	
Enable Port Auto-Discovery Policy	
Enable Info Policy for Neighbor Discovery	
Configure Unified Ports	
Enable Server and Uplink Ports	
Create Pools	

Set Packages and Policies	50
Configure Cisco UCS LAN Connectivity	63
Create Uplink Port Channels	63
Create VLANs	
Create vNIC Templates	
Set Jumbo Frames in Cisco UCS Fabric	
Create LAN Connectivity Policy	
Configure FC SAN Connectivity	83
Create VSANs	83
Assign VSANs to FC Storage Ports	85
Create vHBA Templates	
Create SAN Connectivity Policy	
Create Boot Policy	
Create Service Profile Template	
Configure Storage Provisioning	
Configure Networking Options	
Configure Zoning Options	
Configure vNIC/HBA Placement	
Configure vMedia Policy	
Configure Server Boot Order	
Configure Maintenance Policy	
Configure Server Assignment	
Configure Operational Policies	
Create vMedia Service Profile Template	
Create Service Profiles	
Configuring Host Connectivity and Presentation of Storage on Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform	
Create a Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning Pool for UCS Server Boot LDEVs	
Create a Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning Pool for UCS Server VMFS Volume LDEVs	
Create Host Groups for Cisco UCS Server vHBAs on Each Fabric	
Create Boot LDEVs for Each UCS Service Profile and Add LDEV Paths	
Create Shared VMFS LDEVs and Add LDEV Paths	
ESXi Installation	
Download Cisco Custom Image for ESXi 6.7 U1	
Log into Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect	
Set Up VMware ESXi Installation	
Install ESXi	
Set Up Management Networking for ESXi Hosts	
Log into VMware ESXi Hosts by Using VMware Host Client	
Set Up VMkernel Ports and Virtual Switch	
Create the VSI Datacenter	136
Add the VMware ESXi Hosts Using the VMware vSphere Web Client	
Create VMware vDS for Application Traffic	140



Executive Summary



Cisco Validated Designs consist of systems and solutions that are designed, tested, and documented to facilitate and improve customer deployments. These designs incorporate a wide range of technologies and products into a portfolio of solutions that have been developed to address the business needs of our customers.

Cisco and Hitachi are working together to deliver a converged infrastructure solution that helps enterprise businesses meet the challenges of today and position themselves for the future. Leveraging decades of industry expertise and superior technology, this Cisco CVD offers a resilient, agile, and flexible foundation for today's businesses. In addition, the Cisco and Hitachi partnership extends beyond a single solution, enabling businesses to benefit from their ambitious roadmap of evolving technologies such as advanced analytics, IoT, cloud, and edge capabilities. With Cisco and Hitachi, organizations can confidently take the next step in their modernization journey and prepare themselves to take ad-vantage of new business opportunities enabled by innovative technology.

This document explains the deployment of the Cisco and Hitachi Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure as a Virtual Server Infrastructure (VSI). The recommended solution architecture is built on Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS) using the unified software release to support the Cisco UCS hardware platforms for Cisco UCS B-Series Blade Servers, Cisco UCS 6400 or 6300 Fabric Interconnects, Cisco Nexus 9000 Series switches, and Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform (VSP).

Solution Overview

Introduction

Modernizing your data center can be overwhelming, and it's vital to select a trusted technology partner with proven expertise. With Cisco and Hitachi as partners, companies can build for the future by enhancing systems of record, supporting systems of innovation, and growing their business. Organizations need an agile solution, free from operational inefficiencies, to deliver continuous data availability, meet SLAs, and prioritize innovation.

Hitachi and Cisco Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure as a Virtual Server Infrastructure (VSI) is a best practice datacenter architecture built on the collaboration of Hitachi Vantara and Cisco to meet the needs of enterprise customers utilizing virtual server workloads. This architecture is composed of the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform (VSP) connecting directly to Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS), and further enabled with the Cisco Nexus family of switches.

These deployment instructions are based on the buildout of the Cisco and Hitachi Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure validated reference architecture that was added to cover a direct attached storage configuration. The reference architecture covers specifics of products utilized within the Cisco validation lab, but the solution is considered relevant for equivalent supported components listed within Cisco and Hitachi Vantara's published compatibility matrixes. Supported adjustments from the example validated build must be evaluated with care as their implementation instructions may differ.

Audience

The audience for this document includes, but is not limited to; sales engineers, field consultants, professional services, IT managers, partner engineers, and customers who want to modernize their infrastructure to meet SLAs and their business needs at any scale.

Purpose of this Document

This document provides a step by step configuration and implementation guide for the Cisco and Hitachi Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure solution. This solution features a validated reference architecture composed of:

- Cisco UCS Compute
- Cisco Nexus Switches
- Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform

For the design decisions and technology discussion of the solution, please refer to the Cisco and Hitachi Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure Design Guide:

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/unified_computing/ucs/UCS_CVDs/cisco_hitachi_adaptivesolutions_ci_design.html



The initial work for this CVD using the MDS involved two topologies including the Hitachi VSP G370 paired with the Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect, and the Hitachi VSP G1500 paired with the Cisco UCS 6332-16UP Fabric Interconnect, both validating vSphere 6.5 U2 and vSphere 6.7 U1. For the direct attached architecture featured in this deployment guide, the validation set was reduced to the Hitachi VSP G370 paired with the Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect validating with vSphere 6.7 U1. The examples shown are from the validated topology, but within the reference architecture, the previously validated components are still considered supported.

Solution Design

Architecture

Cisco and Hitachi Adaptive Solutions for Converged Infrastructure is a validated reference architecture targeting Virtual Server Infrastructure(VSI) implementations. The architecture is built around the Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS) and the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform (VSP) connected directly for storage traffic, and further enabled with Cisco Nexus Switches. The Cisco MDS is removed in this design, giving a slightly easier configuration, but adopters should consider that scaling options will be impacted when removing the MDS from the solution. Within this direct attached model, these components are brought together to form a powerful and scalable design, built on the best practices of both companies to create an ideal environment for virtualized systems.

The solution is built and validated featuring the direct connection of the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect to the Hitachi VSP Storage System, using the Nexus switching infrastructure to further extend the infrastructure.

The topology shown in Figure 1 leverages:

- Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 100Gb capable, LAN connectivity to the UCS compute resources.
- Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect Unified management of UCS compute, and the compute's access to storage and networks.
- Cisco UCS B200 M5 High powered, versatile blade server, conceived for virtual computing.
- Hitachi VSP G₃₇₀ Mid-range, high-performance storage system with optional all-flash configuration.





The Cisco UCS B200 M5 blade servers in this topology are hosted within a Cisco UCS 5108 Chassis and connect into the fabric interconnects from the chassis using Cisco UCS 2208XP I/O Modules (IOM). The 2208XP IOM supports 10G connections into the 10/25G ports of the Cisco UCS 6454 FIs, delivering a high port availability that may fit well in a branch office setting.

Management components for the architecture additionally include:

- Cisco UCS Manager Management delivered through the Fabric Interconnect, providing stateless compute, and policy driven implementation of the servers managed by it.
- Cisco Intersight (optional) Comprehensive unified visibility across UCS domains, along with proactive alerts and enablement of expedited Cisco TAC communications.

The direct attached architecture was validated for vSphere 6.7 U1, with the MDS based topology additionally validated with vSphere 6.5 U2 to accommodate a larger range of expected customer deployments. Previous, and newer versions of vSphere, as well as other vendor hypervisors may be supported. These additional hypervisors must be within the compatibility and interoperability matrices listed at the start of the next section but are not included in this validated design.

Deployment Hardware and Software

Hardware and Software Versions

Table 1 lists the validated hardware and software versions used for this solution. Configuration specifics are given in this deployment guide for the devices and versions listed in the following tables. Component and software version substitution from what is listed is considered acceptable within this reference architecture, but substitution will need to comply with the hardware and software compatibility matrices from both Cisco and Hitachi.

Cisco UCS Hardware Compatibility Matrix:

https://ucshcltool.cloudapps.cisco.com/public/

Cisco Nexus and MDS Interoperability Matrix:

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/switches/datacenter/mds9000/interoperability/matrix/intmatrx/Matrix1.html

Cisco Nexus Recommended Releases for Nexus 9K:

https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus9000/sw/recommended_release/b_Minimum_and_Reco mmended_Cisco_NX-OS_Releases_for_Cisco_Nexus_9000_Series_Switches.html

Hitachi Vantara Interoperability:

<u>https://support.hitachivantara.com/en_us/interoperability.html</u> sub-page -> (VSP G1X00, F1500, Gxx0, Fxx0, VSP, HUS VM VMWare Support Matrix)

Any substituted hardware or software may have different configurations from what is detailed in this guide and will require a thorough evaluation of the substituted product reference documents.

Table 1 Validated Hardware and Software

Component		Software Version/Firmware Version
Network	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2	7.0(3)l7(5a)
Compute	Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect 6454	4.0(2b)
	Cisco UCS 2208XP IOM	4.0(2b)
	Cisco UCS B200 M5	4.0(2b)
	VMware vSphere	6.7 U1 VMware_ESXi_6.7.0_10302608_Custom_Cisco_6.7.1.1.iso
	ESXi 6.7 U1 nenic	1.0.27.0
	ESXi 6.7 U1 nfnic	4.0.0.33

Component		Software Version/Firmware Version	
	VM Virtual Hardware Version	13 ₍₁₎	
Storage	Hitachi VSP G ₃₇ 0	88-02-03-60/00	

(1) Hardware Version 13 was kept for initial transfer support between vSphere 6.5 and vSphere 6.7 of the VM test harness used.

Configuration Guidelines

This document provides details for configuring a fully redundant, highly available configuration for the Cisco and Hitachi Converged Infrastructure. References are made to which component is being configured with each step, either "-1" or "-2". For example, AA19-9336-1 and AA19-9336-2 are used to identify the two Nexus switches that are provisioned with this document, with AA19-9336-1 and 2 used to represent a command invoked on both Nexus switches. The Cisco UCS fabric interconnects are similarly configured. Additionally, this document details the steps for provisioning multiple Cisco UCS hosts, and these examples are identified as: VM-Host-Infra-01, VM-Host-Infra-02 to represent hosts deployed to each of the fabric interconnects in this document. Finally, to indicate that you should include information pertinent to your environment in a given step, <text> appears as part of the command structure.

See the following example of a configuration step for both Nexus switches:

AA19-9336-1&2 (config) # ntp server <<var_oob_ntp>> use-vrf management

This document is intended to enable you to fully configure the customer environment. In this process, various steps require you to insert customer-specific naming conventions, IP addresses, and VLAN schemes, as well as to record appropriate MAC addresses. The tables provided can be copied or printed for use as a reference to align the appropriate customer deployed values for configuration specifics used within the guide.

Table 2 lists the VLANs necessary for deployment as outlined in this guide.

VLAN Name	VLAN Purpose	ID Used in Validating this Document	Customer Deployed Value
Out of Band Mgmt	VLAN for out-of-band management interfaces	19	
In-Band Mgmt	In-Band Mgmt VLAN for in-band management interfaces		
Native	VLAN to which untagged frames are assigned	2	
vMotion	VLAN for VMware vMotion	1000	
VM-App1	VLAN for Production VM Interfaces	201	
VM-App2	VLAN for Production VM Interfaces	202	
VM-App3	VLAN for Production VM Interfaces	203	

Table 2VLANs Used in the Deployment

Table 3 lists additional configuration variables are used throughout the document as pointers to where a customer provided name, or reference for relevant existing information will be used.

Variable	Variable Description	Customer Deployed Value
< <var_nexus_a_hostname>></var_nexus_a_hostname>	Nexus switch A hostname (Example: b19-93180-1)	
< <var_nexus_a_mgmt_ip>></var_nexus_a_mgmt_ip>	Out-of-band management IP for Nexus switch A (Example: 192.168.164.13)	
< <var_nexus_b_hostname>></var_nexus_b_hostname>	Nexus switch B hostname (Example: b19-93180-2)	
< <var_nexus_b_mgmt_ip>></var_nexus_b_mgmt_ip>	Out-of-band management IP for Nexus switch B (Example: 192.168.164.14)	
< <var_oob_mgmt_mask>></var_oob_mgmt_mask>	Out-of-band management network netmask (Example: 255.255.255.0)	
< <var_oob_gateway>></var_oob_gateway>	Out-of-band management network gateway (Example: 192.168.164.254)	
< <var_oob_ntp>></var_oob_ntp>	Out-of-band management network NTP server (Example: 192.168.164.254)	
< <var_nexus_a_ib_ip>></var_nexus_a_ib_ip>	In-band management HSRP network interface Nexus switch A (Example: 10.1.164.252)	
< <var_nexus_b_ib_ip>></var_nexus_b_ib_ip>	In-band management HSRP network interface for Nexus switch B (Example: 10.1.164.253)	
< <var_nexus_ib_vip>></var_nexus_ib_vip>	In-band management HSRP network VIP (Example: 10.1.164.254)	
< <var_password>></var_password>	Administrative password (Example: NotaP4ss)	
< <var_dns_domain_name>></var_dns_domain_name>	DNS domain name (Example: ucp.cisco.com)	
< <var_nameserver_ip>></var_nameserver_ip>	DNS server IP(s) (Example: 10.1.168.9)	
< <var_timezone>></var_timezone>	Time zone (Example: America/New_York)	
< <var_ib_mgmt_vlan_id>></var_ib_mgmt_vlan_id>	In-band management network VLAN ID (Example: 119)	
< <var_ib_mgmt_vlan_netmask_length>></var_ib_mgmt_vlan_netmask_length>	Length of IB-MGMT-VLAN Netmask (Example: /24)	
< <var_ib_gateway_ip>></var_ib_gateway_ip>	In-band management network VLAN ID (Example: 10.1.168.1)	
< <var_vmotion_vlan_id>></var_vmotion_vlan_id>	vMotion management network VLAN ID (Example: 1000)	
< <var_vmotion_vlan_netmask_length>></var_vmotion_vlan_netmask_length>	Length of vMotion-VLAN Netmask (Example: /24)	
< <var_vsan_a_id>></var_vsan_a_id>	VSAN used for the A Fabric between the VSP /FI (Example: 101)	
< <var_vsan_b_id>></var_vsan_b_id>	VSAN used for the A Fabric between the VSP /FI (Example: 102)	

 Table 3
 Variables for Information Used in the Design

Variable	Variable Description	Customer Deployed Value
< <vsp_hostname>></vsp_hostname>	Hitachi VSP storage system name (Example g370-	
< <vsp-g370>></vsp-g370>	[Serial Number])	
< <var_ucs_clustername>></var_ucs_clustername>	Cisco UCS Manager cluster host name (Example:	
< <var_ucs_6454_clustername>></var_ucs_6454_clustername>	AA19-0454)	
< <var_ucsa_mgmt_ip>></var_ucsa_mgmt_ip>	Cisco UCS fabric interconnect (FI) A out-of-band management IP address (Example: 192.168.168.16)	
< <var_ucs_mgmt_vip>></var_ucs_mgmt_vip>	Cisco UCS fabric interconnect (FI) Cluster out-of- band management IP address (Example: 192.168.168.15)	
< <var_ucsb_mgmt_ip>></var_ucsb_mgmt_ip>	Cisco UCS FI B out-of-band management IP address (Example: 192.168.168.17)	
< <var_vm_host_infra_o1_ip>></var_vm_host_infra_o1_ip>	VMware ESXi host o1 in-band management IP (Example: 10.1.168.21)	
< <var_vm_host_infra_02_ip>></var_vm_host_infra_02_ip>	VMware ESXi host o2 in-band management IP (Example: 10.1.168.22)	
< <var_vm_host_infra_vmotion_o1_ip>></var_vm_host_infra_vmotion_o1_ip>	VMware ESXi host o1 vMotion IP (Example: 192.168.100.21)	
< <var_vm_host_infra_vmotion_o2_ip>></var_vm_host_infra_vmotion_o2_ip>	VMware ESXi host o2 vMotion IP (Example: 192.168.100.22)	
< <var_vmotion_subnet_mask>></var_vmotion_subnet_mask>	vMotion subnet mask (Example: 255.255.255.0)	
< <var_vcenter_server_ip>></var_vcenter_server_ip>	IP address of the vCenter Server (Example: 10.1.168.100)	

Physical Cabling

This section explains the cabling examples used for the validated topology in the environment. To make connectivity clear in this example, the tables include both the local and remote port locations.

This document assumes that out-of-band management ports are plugged into an existing management infrastructure at the deployment site. The upstream network from the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches is out of scope of this document, with only the assumption that these switches will connect to the upstream switch or switches with a virtual Port Channel (vPC).

Physical Cabling for the Cisco UCS 6454 with the VSP G370 Topology

Figure 2 shows the cabling configuration used in the design featuring the Cisco UCS 6454 with the VSP G370.



Figure 2 Cabling Diagram for Cisco and Hitachi Converged Infrastructure Featuring Cisco UCS 6454 with the VSP G370

The following tables list the specific port connections with the cables used in the deployment of the Cisco UCS 6454 and the VSP G₃₇₀.

Table 4	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 A Cabling Information for Cisco UCS 6454 to VSP G370
---------	--

	0			
Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 A	Eth1/1	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 B	Eth1/1
	Eth1/2	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 B	Eth1/2

Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
	Eth1/5	100GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	Eth 1/53
	Eth1/6	100GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	Eth 1/53
	Eth1/35	40GbE or 100GbE	Upstream Network Switch	Any
	Eth1/36	40GbE or 100GbE	Upstream Network Switch	Any
	MGMTo	GbE	GbE management switch	Any

Selecting 100GbE between the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches and the Cisco UCS 6454 fabric interconnects is not required but was selected as an available option between the devices.

Table 5	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2	B Cabling	Information for	Cisco UCS	6454 to VS	P G370

Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 B	Eth1/1	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 A	Eth1/1
	Eth1/2	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 A	Eth1/2
	Eth1/5	100GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	Eth 1/54
	Eth1/6	100GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	Eth 1/54
	Eth1/35	40GbE or 100GbE	Upstream Network Switch	Any
	Eth1/36	40GbE or 100GbE	Upstream Network Switch	Any
	MGMTo	GbE	GbE management switch	Any

Table 6 Cisco UCS 6454 A Cabling Information for Cisco UCS 6454 to VSP G370

Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/1	32Gb FC	VSP G ₃₇₀	CL1-A
	FC 1/2	32Gb FC	VSP G ₃₇₀	CL2-B
	Eth1/9	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX A	IOM 1/1
	Eth1/10	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX A	IOM 1/2
	Eth1/11	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX A	IOM 1/3
	Eth1/12	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX A	IOM 1/4
	Eth1/33	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 A	Eth1/5
	Eth1/34	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 B	Eth1/5
	MGMTo	GbE	GbE management switch	Any
	Lı	GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	Lı
	L2	GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	L2



Ports 1-8 on the Cisco UCS 6454 are unified ports that can be configured as Ethernet or as Fibre Channel ports. Server ports should be initially deployed started with 1/9 to give flexibility for FC port needs, and ports 49-54 are

not configurable for server ports. Also, ports 45-48 are the only configurable ports for 1Gbps connections that may be needed to a network switch.

	15 mornation for			
Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/1	32Gb FC	VSP G ₃₇₀	CL ₃ -B
	FC 1/2	32Gb FC	VSP G ₃₇₀	CL4-A
	Eth1/9	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX B	IOM 1/1
	Eth1/10	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX B	IOM 1/2
	Eth1/11	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX B	IOM 1/3
	Eth1/12	10GbE	Cisco UCS Chassis 2208XP FEX B	IOM 1/4
	Eth1/33	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 A	Eth1/6
	Eth1/34	40GbE	Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 B	Eth1/6
	MGMTo	GbE	GbE management switch	Any
	L1	GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	Lı
	L2	GbE	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	L2

Table 7 Cisco UCS 6454 B Cabling Information for Cisco UCS 6454 to VSP G370 Topology

 Table 8
 Hitachi VSP G370 Cabling Information for Cisco UCS 6454 to VSP G370 Topology

	-			
Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Hitachi VSP G ₃₇₀	CL 1-A	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/1
	CL 2-B	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/2
	CL 3-B	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/1
	CL 4-A	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/2
	Cont1	GbE	SVP	LAN ₃
	LAN			
	Cont2	GbE	SVP	LAN4
	LAN			

¢

6

16Gb or 32Gb FC can be used with the VSP G370 and 16Gb FC can be used with the VSP G1500, 8Gb FC cannot be used on either VSP model when using a direct attached topology as appropriate fill patterns are not compatible with 8Gb.

SVP will be configured by a Hitachi Vantara support engineer at the time of initial configuration and is out of scope of the primary deployment.

Cisco Nexus Switch Configuration

The Nexus switch configuration will explain the basic L₂ and L₃ functionality for the application environment used in the validation environment hosted by the UCS domains. The application gateways are hosted by the pair of Nexus switches, but primary routing is passed onto an existing router that is upstream of the converged infrastructure. This upstream router will need to be aware of any networks created on the Nexus switches, but configuration of an upstream router is beyond the scope of this deployment guide.

Physical Connectivity

Physical cabling should be completed by following the diagram and table references found in section Deployment Hardware and Software.

Initial Nexus Configuration Dialogue

Complete this dialogue on each switch, using a serial connection to the console port of the switch, unless Power on Auto Provisioning is being used.

```
Abort Power on Auto Provisioning and continue with normal setup? (yes/no) [n]: yes
         ---- System Admin Account Setup ----
Do you want to enforce secure password standard (yes/no) [y]:
 Enter the password for "admin":
 Confirm the password for "admin":
         ---- Basic System Configuration Dialog VDC: 1 ----
This setup utility will guide you through the basic configuration of
the system. Setup configures only enough connectivity for management
of the system.
Please register Cisco Nexus9000 Family devices promptly with your
supplier. Failure to register may affect response times for initial
service calls. Nexus9000 devices must be registered to receive
entitled support services.
Press Enter at anytime to skip a dialog. Use ctrl-c at anytime
to skip the remaining dialogs.
 Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog (yes/no): yes
  Create another login account (yes/no) [n]:
  Configure read-only SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]:
  Configure read-write SNMP community string (yes/no) [n]:
  Enter the switch name : <<var nexus A hostname>>|<<var nexus B hostname>>
  Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no) [y]:
    Mgmt0 IPv4 address : << var_nexus_A_mgmt_ip>> |<< var_nexus_B_mgmt_ip>>
    Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask : <<var oob mgmt netmask>
  Configure the default gateway? (yes/no) [y]:
    IPv4 address of the default gateway : <<var oob gw>>
  Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no) [n]:
```

```
Enable the telnet service? (yes/no) [n]:
  Enable the ssh service? (yes/no) [y]:
    Type of ssh key you would like to generate (dsa/rsa) [rsa]:
   Number of rsa key bits <1024-2048> [1024]:
  Configure the ntp server? (yes/no) [n]: y
  NTP server IPv4 address: <<var oob ntp>>>
  Configure default interface layer (L3/L2) [L2]:
  Configure default switchport interface state (shut/noshut) [noshut]: shut
  Configure CoPP system profile (strict/moderate/lenient/dense) [strict]:
The following configuration will be applied:
 password strength-check
  switchname AA19-9336-1
vrf context management
ip route 0.0.0.0/0 192.168.168.254
exit
 no feature telnet
 ssh key rsa 1024 force
 feature ssh
 system default switchport
 system default switchport shutdown
  copp profile strict
interface mgmt0
ip address 192.168.168.13 255.255.255.0
no shutdown
Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no) [n]:
Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no) [y]:
```

Enable Features and Settings

To enable IP switching features, run the following commands on each Cisco Nexus:

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# feature lacp
AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# feature vpc
AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# feature interface-vlan
AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# feature hsrp
```



The reference of AA19-9336-1&2 is used to represent a command run on both switches, AA19-9336-1 represents a command to run only on the first Nexus switch, and AA19-9336-2 stands for a command that should only be run on the second Nexus switch.

Additionally, configure the spanning tree and save the running configuration to start-up:

AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# spanning-tree port type network default AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# spanning-tree port type edge bpdufilter default

Create VLANs

Run the following commands on both switches to create VLANs:

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config) # vlan 119
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name IB-MGMT
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # vlan 2
```

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name Native
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # vlan 1000
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name vMotion
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # vlan 201
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name Web
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # vlan 202
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name App
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # vlan 203
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name DB
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # name DB
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-vlan) # exit
```

Continue adding VLANs as appropriate to your environment.

Add Individual Port Descriptions for Troubleshooting

To add individual port descriptions for troubleshooting activity and verification for switch A, enter the following commands from the global configuration mode:

```
AA19-9336-1(config)# interface port-channel 11
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC peer-link
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface port-channel 15
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC UCS 6454-1 FI
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface port-channel 16
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC UCS 6454-2 FI
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface port-channel 135
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC Upstream Network Switch A
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface port-channel 136
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC Upstream Network Switch B
```



The port-channel numbers will need to match between the two switches, and while the port numbering can be somewhat arbitrary, a numbering scheme of the first port in the port channel is represented in the numbering scheme used, where port channel 11 has a first port of 1/1, and port channel 136 has a first port of 1/36.

```
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/1
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-2 Ethernet1/1
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/2
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-2 Ethernet1/2
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/5
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC 15 connection to UCS 6454-1 FI Ethernet1/53
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC 16 connection to UCS 6454-2 FI Ethernet1/53
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/35
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC 135 connection to Upstream Network Switch A
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/36
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# description vPC 136 connection to Upstream Network Switch B
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# exit
```



In these steps, the interface commands for the VLAN interface and Port Channel interfaces, will create these interfaces if they do not already exist.

To add individual port descriptions for troubleshooting activity and verification for switch B, enter the following commands from the global configuration mode:

```
AA19-9336-2(config)# interface port-channel 11
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC peer-link
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface port-channel 15
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC UCS 6454-1 FI
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface port-channel 16
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC UCS 6454-2 FI
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface port-channel 135
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC Upstream Network Switch A
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface port-channel 136
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC Upstream Network Switch B
```

```
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/1
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-1 Ethernet1/1
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/2
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-1 Ethernet1/2
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/5
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC 15 connection to UCS 6454-1 FI Ethernet1/54
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/6
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC 16 connection to UCS 6454-2 FI Ethernet1/54
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/35
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/36
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# interface Ethernet1/36
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# description vPC 136 connection to Upstream Network Switch B
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# exit
```

Create the vPC Domain

The vPC domain will be assigned a unique number from 1-1000 and will handle the vPC settings specified within the switches. To set the vPC domain configuration on 9336C-FX2 A, run the following commands:

```
AA19-9336-1(config) # vpc domain 10

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # peer-switch

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # role priority 10

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # peer-keepalive destination <<var_nexus_B_mgmt_ip>>

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # delay restore 150

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # peer-gateway

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # auto-recovery

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # ip arp synchronize

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # ip arp synchronize

AA19-9336-1(config-vpc-domain) # exit
```

On the 9336C-FX2 B switch run these slightly differing commands, noting that role priority and peer-keepalive commands will differ from what was previously set:

```
AA19-9336-2(config) # vpc domain 10

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # peer-switch

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # role priority 20

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # peer-keepalive destination <<var_nexus_A_mgmt_ip>>

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # delay restore 150

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # peer-gateway

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # auto-recovery

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # ip arp synchronize

AA19-9336-2(config-vpc-domain) # exit
```

Configure Port Channel Member Interfaces

On each switch, configure the Port Channel member interfaces that will be part of the vPC Peer Link and configure the vPC Peer Link:

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config) # int eth 1/1-2
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if-range) # channel-group 11 mode active
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if-range) # no shut
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if-range) # int port-channel 11
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport mode trunk
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk native vlan 2
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,1000,201-203
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # vpc peer-link
```

Configure Virtual Port Channels

On each switch, configure the Port Channel member interfaces and the vPC Port Channels to the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect and the upstream network switches:

Nexus Connection vPC to Cisco UCS 6454 A

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # int ethernet 1/5

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # channel-group 15 mode active

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # no shut

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # int port-channel 15

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport mode trunk

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk native vlan 2

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,1000,201-203

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # spanning-tree port type edge trunk

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # mtu 9216

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # load-interval counter 3 60

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # vpc 15
```

Nexus Connection vPC to Cisco UCS 6454 B

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # int ethernet 1/6

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # channel-group 16 mode active

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # no shut

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # int port-channel 16

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport mode trunk

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk native vlan 2

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,1000,201-203

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # spanning-tree port type edge trunk

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # mu 9216

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # load-interval counter 3 60

AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # vpc 16
```

Nexus Connection vPC to Upstream Network Switch A

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # interface Ethernet1/35
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # channel-group 135 mode active
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # no shut
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # int port-channel 135
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport mode trunk
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk native vlan 2
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if) # vpc 135
```

Nexus Connection vPC to Upstream Network Switch B

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# interface Ethernet1/36
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# channel-group 136 mode active
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# no shut
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# int port-channel 136
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# switchport mode trunk
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# switchport trunk native vlan 2
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if)# vpc 136
```

Create Hot Standby Router Protocol (HSRP) Switched Virtual Interfaces (SVI)

These interfaces can be considered optional if the subnets of the VLANs used within the environment are managed entirely by an upstream switch, but if that is the case, all managed VLANs will need to be carried up through the vPC to the Upstream switches.

More advanced Cisco routing protocols can be configured within the Nexus switches but are not covered in this design. Routing between the SVIs is directly connected between them as they reside in the same Virtual Routing and Forwarding instance (VRF), and traffic set to enter and exit the VRF will traverse the default gateway set for the switches.

For 9336C-FX2 A:

Nexus A IB-Mgmt SVI

```
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# int vlan 119
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# ip address <<var_nexus_A_ib_ip>>/24
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# hsrp 19
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# ip <<var_nexus_ib_vip>>
```



When HSRP priority is not set, it defaults to 100. Alternating SVIs within a switch are set to a number higher than 105 to set those SVIs to default to be the standby router for that network. Be careful when the VLAN SVI for one switch is set without a priority (defaulting to 100), the partner switch is set to a priority with a value other than 100.

Nexus A Web SVI

```
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# int vlan 201
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# ip address 172.18.101.252/24
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# hsrp 101
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# priority 105
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# ip 172.18.101.254
```

Nexus A App SVI

```
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# int vlan 202
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# ip address 172.18.102.252/24
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# hsrp 102
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# ip 172.18.102.254
```

Nexus A DB SVI

```
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# int vlan 203
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# ip address 172.18.103.252/24
AA19-9336-1(config-if)# hsrp 103
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# priority 105
AA19-9336-1(config-if-hsrp)# ip 172.18.103.254
```

For 9336C-FX2 B:

Nexus B IB-Mgmt SVI

```
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# int vlan 119
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# ip address <<var_nexus_B_ib_ip>>/24
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# hsrp 19
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# priority 105
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# <<var_nexus_ib_vip>>
```

Nexus B Web SVI

```
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# int vlan 201
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# ip address 172.18.101.253/24
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# hsrp 101
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# ip 172.18.101.254
```

Nexus B App SVI

```
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# int vlan 202
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# ip address 172.18.102.253/24
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# hsrp 102
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# priority 105
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# ip 172.18.102.254
```

Nexus B DB SVI

```
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# int vlan 203
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# no shutdown
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# ip address 172.18.103.253/24
AA19-9336-2(config-if)# hsrp 103
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# preempt
AA19-9336-2(config-if-hsrp)# ip 172.18.103.254
```

Set Global Configurations

Run the following commands on both switches to set global configurations:

```
AA19-9336-1&2 (config-if-hsrp)# port-channel load-balance src-dst l4port
AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# ip route 0.0.0.0/0 <<var_ib_gateway_ip>>
AA19-9336-1&2 (config)# ntp server <<var_oob_ntp>> use-vrf management
```

In the above command block, the "l4port" contains the letter L and 4, not the number fourteen.

The ntp server should be an accessible NTP server for use by the switches. In this case, point to an out-of-band source.

AA19-9336-1&2 (config) # ntp master 3 AA19-9336-1&2 (config) # ntp source **<<var nexus ib vip>>**

Setting the switches as ntp masters to redistribute as an ntp source is optional here but can be a valuable fix if the tenant networks are not enabled to reach the primary ntp server.



*** Save all configurations to this point on both Nexus Switches ***

AA19-9336-1&2 (config) # copy running-config startup-config

Configure Fibre Channel Ports on Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform

In order for Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform fibre channel ports to be exposed properly to the Cisco UCS components, modification of the ports from their default values must be performed. Prior to beginning this section, ensure that you have credentials on the Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform that have at least the **Administrator** role permissions within Hitachi Storage Navigator. Your partner or Hitachi services personnel provide credentials to your Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform after initial setup and configuration of the storage system.

To configure the fibre channel ports within the VSP storage system, follow these steps:

- 1. Access Hitachi Storage Navigator through a web browser.
- VSP Fxoo Models and VSP Gxoo Models: <u>https://<IP</u> of Storage System SVP>/dev/storage/886000<Serial Number of Storage System>/emergency.do – for example, if Storage System SVP IP address is 10.0.0.2 and Serial Number of Storage System is 451200, the URL would be:

https://10.0.0.2/dev/storage/88600451200/emergency.do

3. Log into Hitachi Storage Navigator.



- 4. From the left Explorer pane, select the **Storage Systems** tab.
- 5. Expand the storage system being configured. Highlight the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** element in the navigation tree, then click on the **Ports** tab in the main configuration pane.

Hitachi Device Manager Storage Navigator File Actions Reports Settings Maintenance Utility View Tool Help							
Explorer	Ports/Host Grou	ups/iSCS	I Targets				
Storage Systems	VSP G370(S/N:451	. <u>610)</u> > Po	rts/Host Groups/i	SCSI Targets			
* 🗊 VSP G370(S/N:451610)	Number of Ports	:					
🔞 Tasks							
🛍 Reports	Host Groups /	iSCSI Tai	rgets Hosts	Ports Login WWNs/iSCSI Names	CHAP Users		
🕻 🎁 Components							
🏷 🎆 Parity Groups	Edit Ports R	lemove Po	rt CHAP Users	Edit T10 PI Mode Export			
🞁 Logical Devices	☆ Filter ON	OFF Se	lect All Pages Co	lumn Settings			
Pools			incert wateral		IPv4		
 (CS_Boot_Pool(0)	Port ID	Туре	Port Mode	WWN / iSCSI Name	ID Address		
(a) UCS VMFS Perf(2)					IF Address		
Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets	CL1-A Fibre - 50060E8012C99A00				-		
External Storage	CL3-A	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A20	-		
	CL1-B	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A01	-		
ing Repication	СL3-В	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A21	-		
	CL2-A	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A10	-		
	CL4-A	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A30	-		
	<u>СL2-В</u>	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A11	-		
	СL4-В	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A31	-		
	CL5-A	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A40	-		
<pre>K</pre>	CL7-A	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A60	-		
	CL5-B	Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A41	-		
		Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A61	-		
		Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A50	-		
		Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A70	-		
		Fibre	-	50060E8012C99A51	-		
Analytics		FIDre	-	50060E8012C99A/1	-		
Administration							

- 6. Select the checkboxes for the ports being used within the solution, then click the **Edit Ports** button to instantiate the Edit Ports dialog box.
- 7. Select checkboxes to edit the following settings to modify the selected ports:
 - Port Attribute: Target
 - Port Security: Enable
 - Port Speed: Auto
 - Fabric: ON

3

- Connection Type: P-to-P

Port Attribute will only appear as an option in VSP G1500 Edit Ports dialogue.

8. Example ports used in the Cisco UCS 6454 to VSP G_{370} used in this design are listed in Table 9.

Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
Hitachi VSP G ₃₇ 0	CL 1-A	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/1
	CL 2-B	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/2

Table 9 VSP G370 to UCS Ports

Local Device	Local Port	Connection	Remote Device	Remote Port
	CL 3-B	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/1
	CL 4-A	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/2

Figure 3 VSP G370 Edit Ports Pop-Up Window

Edit Ports	Ŧ□×
1.Edit Ports > 2.Confirm	
This wizard lets you edit one or more properties. Check the box in front of the property you want to edit, and then enter the new value.	
Port Security : 💽 Enable 🔘 Disable	
Port Speed : Auto	•
Address (Loop ID) : EF (0)	▼
Fabric : ON OFF	
Connection Type : P-to-P	↓
Back Next Finish	Cancel ?

- 9. Click **OK** for any warning that appears.
- 10. Click Finish.
- 11. Review the changes to be made and check the **Go to tasks window for status** box, then click the **Apply** button.

Edit	Ports	_	_	_	_	_	Ŧ□×	
1.Edit	Ports > 2	.Confirm						
Ente	Enter a name for the task. Confirm the settings in the list and click Apply to add task in Tasks queue for execution.							
Tas	k Name:	190606-Ed	ditPorts Characters)					
	Selected	Ports	_	_				
	Port ID	Security	Speed	SFP Data Transfer Rate	Address (Loop ID)	Fabric	Connection Type	
	CL1-A	Enabled	32 Gbps	32 Gbps	EF (0)	ON	P-to-P	
	CL3-B	Enabled	32 Gbps	32 Gbps	EO (5)	ON	P-to-P	
	CL4-A	Enabled	32 Gbps	32 Gbps	D6 (9)	ON	P-to-P	
	CL2-B	Enabled	32 Gbps	32 Gbps	D3 (12)	ON	P-to-P	
,								
							Total: 4	
			Go to tasks windo	w for status 🛛 🕁 E	ack <u>Nex</u> t	Apply	Cancel ?	

12. The Task view window will appear and show the completion status of the Edit Ports task. Wait until the task status shows Complete and proceed to the next section.

Hitachi Device Manager Storage Navigator						
Cer -> File Actions Reports Settings Maintenance Utility View Iool Help						
Explorer	Tasks					
Storage Systems	<u>VSP G370(S/N:451610)</u> > Tasks					
* 🗊 VSP G370(S/N:451610)	Completed 12 Suspended					
🙀 Tasks	In Progress	1	Failed			
🙀 Reports	Waiting	0				
' 🎁 Components			^			
' 💏 Parity Groups	Tasks					
🌈 Logical Devices	Suspand Tasks Resume Tasks Delete Tasks More	Actions				
* 🍓 Pools						
(UCS_Boot_Pool(0)	* Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Column Settings					
UCS_VMFS_Perf(2)	Task Name Status Type	ser Submission Time 1 ▼ Start Time	End Time Auto Delete			
Mig Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets	🔲 🎬 <u>190606-Edit</u> 🕑 <u>8% In Pr</u> Edit Ports 🛛	nainten 2019/06/06 16:58:05 2019/06/06 16:58:07	Enabled			

Cisco UCS Compute Configuration

This section explains the configuration of the Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnects used in this UCP solution. As with the Nexus explained beforehand, some changes may be appropriate for a customer's environment, but care should be taken when stepping outside of these instructions as it may lead to an improper configuration.

Physical Connectivity

Physical cabling should be completed by following the diagram and table references in section Deployment Hardware and Software.

Upgrade Cisco UCS Manager Software to Version 4.0(2b)

This document assumes the use of Cisco UCS 4.0(2b). To upgrade the Cisco UCS Manager software and the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect software to version 4.0(2b), go to <u>Cisco UCS Manager Install and Upgrade Guides</u>.

Cisco UCS Base Configuration

The initial configuration dialogue for the Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnects will be provide the primary information to the first fabric interconnect, with the second taking on most settings after joining the cluster.

To start on the configuration of the Fabric Interconnect A, connect to the console of the fabric interconnect and step through the Basic System Configuration Dialogue:

```
---- Basic System Configuration Dialog ----
This setup utility will guide you through the basic configuration of
the system. Only minimal configuration including IP connectivity to
the Fabric interconnect and its clustering mode is performed through these steps.
Type Ctrl-C at any time to abort configuration and reboot system.
To back track or make modifications to already entered values,
complete input till end of section and answer no when prompted
to apply configuration.
Enter the configuration method. (console/gui) ? console
Enter the setup mode; setup newly or restore from backup. (setup/restore) ? setup
You have chosen to setup a new Fabric interconnect. Continue? (y/n): y
Enforce strong password? (y/n) [y]: <Enter>
Enter the password for "admin": <<var password>>>
Confirm the password for "admin": <<var password>>>
Is this Fabric interconnect part of a cluster(select 'no' for standalone)? (yes/no) [n]: y
Enter the switch fabric (A/B) []: A
Enter the system name: <<var_ucs_6454_clustername>>
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IP address : <<var ucsa mgmt ip>>
Physical Switch Mgmt0 IPv4 netmask : <<var oob mgmt mask>>
IPv4 address of the default gateway : <<var oob gateway>>
Cluster IPv4 address : <<var_ucs_mgmt_vip>>
```

```
Configure the DNS Server IP address? (yes/no) [n]: y
  DNS IP address : <<var_nameserver_ip>>
Configure the default domain name? (yes/no) [n]: y
 Default domain name : <<var_dns_domain_name>>
Join centralized management environment (UCS Central)? (yes/no) [n]: <Enter>
Following configurations will be applied:
  Switch Fabric=A
 System Name=AA19-6454
 Enforced Strong Password=yes
 Physical Switch Mgmt0 IP Address=192.168.168.16
  Physical Switch Mgmt0 IP Netmask=255.255.255.0
 Default Gateway=192.168.168.254
  Ipv6 value=0
 DNS Server=10.1.168.9
 Domain Name=ucp.cisco.com
 Cluster Enabled=yes
  Cluster IP Address=192.168.168.15
 NOTE: Cluster IP will be configured only after both Fabric Interconnects are initialized.
        UCSM will be functional only after peer FI is configured in clustering mode.
Apply and save the configuration (select 'no' if you want to re-enter)? (yes/no): yes
Applying configuration. Please wait.
Configuration file - Ok
```



Wait for the appearance of a login prompt on UCS FI A before proceeding to B.

Continue the configuration on the console of the Fabric Interconnect B:

```
Enter the configuration method. (console/gui) [console] ?
Installer has detected the presence of a peer Fabric interconnect. This Fabric interconnect will be
added to the cluster. Continue (y/n) ? y
Enter the admin password of the peer Fabric interconnect:
   Connecting to peer Fabric interconnect... done
   Retrieving config from peer Fabric interconnect... done
   Peer Fabric interconnect Mgmt0 IPv4 Address: 192.168.168.16
   Peer Fabric interconnect Mgmt0 IPv4 Netmask: 255.255.255.0
   Cluster IPv4 address : 192.168.168.15
   Peer FI is IPv4 Cluster enabled. Please Provide Local Fabric Interconnect Mgmt0 IPv4 Address
   Physical Switch Mgmt0 IP address : 192.168.164.17
   Apply and save the configuration (select 'no' if you want to re-enter)? (yes/no): yes
   Applying configuration. Please wait.
```

Cisco UCS Manager Setup

Log into Cisco UCS Manager

To log into the Cisco Unified Computing System (Cisco UCS) environment and Cisco UCS Manager (UCSM), follow these steps:

1. Open a web browser and navigate to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnect cluster address.

- 2. Click the Launch UCS Manager link within the opening page.
- 3. If prompted to accept security certificates, accept as necessary.
- 4. When the Cisco UCS Manager login is prompted, enter admin as the user name and enter the administrative password.
- 5. Click Login to log into Cisco UCS Manager.

Anonymous Reporting

During the first connection to the Cisco UCS Manager GUI, a pop-up window will appear to allow for the configuration of Anonymous Reporting to Cisco on use to help with future development. To create anonymous reporting, follow this step:

1. In the Anonymous Reporting window, select whether to send anonymous data to Cisco for improving future products, and provide the appropriate SMTP server gateway information if configuring:

and improvements that will most if you decide to enable this featur n the Call Home settings under t View Sample Data	erver anonymously. This data helps us prioritize the featu benefit our customers. re in future, you can do so from the "Anonymous Reportin the Admin tab.
Do you authorize the disclosure ●Yes⊖No	e of this information to Cisco Smart CallHome?
- SMTP Server-	
Host (IP Address or Hostname):
Por	rt: 25
10	
Don't show this message again	n.

Æ

If you want to enable or disable Anonymous Reporting at a later date, it can be found within Cisco UCS Manager under: Admin -> Communication Management -> Call Home, which has a tab on the far right for Anonymous Reporting.

Place Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects in Fiber Channel Switching Mode

In order to use Fiber Channel Storage Ports for storage directly connected to the Cisco UCS fabric interconnects, the fabric interconnects must be changed from fiber channel end host mode to fiber channel switching mode.

To place the fabric interconnects in fiber channel switching mode, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment.
- 2. Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary).
- 3. In the center pane, select set FC Switching Mode. Click Yes and OK for the confirmation message.

The standby FI will reboot, after completion the primary will be prompted for a reboot as a pending activity.

cisco.	UCS Manager			0	•) ©
æ	All	Equipment / Fabric Interconnects / Fabric Interconnect A (prima Pending Activities	×			
	✓ Equipment Chassis	General Physical Ports Fans PSUs Physical Disc There are activities in the system requiring reboot. Click the Pending Activities button on the toolbar to acknowled	dge.			
윦	 Rack-Mounts Enclosures 	Fault Summary Physical Display Do not show again				
≢	FEX Servers	Pending Activities ×				
≡	Fabric Interconnects Fabric Interconnect A (primary	User Acknowledged Activities Scheduled Activities				
	 Fabric Interconnect B (subord) Policies 	Service Profiles Fabric Interconnects Servers Chassis Profiles				
20	Port Auto-Discovery Policy	Actions	54			
		Pending Disruptions : defaultValue Pending Changes : Details Modified at : 2019-06-11T13:38:25Z Acknowledgment State : Waiting For User Schedule : fn-reboot	MZ			

- 4. Select Reboot now under Actions. Click Yes at the confirmation prompt.
- 5. Wait for both Fabric Interconnects to reboot by monitoring the console ports and log back into Cisco UCS Manager.

Synchronize Cisco UCS to NTP

To synchronize the Cisco UCS environment to the NTP server, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Admin tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Timezone Management drop-down list and click Timezone.

æ	Time Zone Management 🗸	Time Zone M	lanagement	/ Timezone				
Ξ	 Time Zone Management 	General	Events					
	Timezone	·						
윪		Actions			Properties			-
		Add NTP S	erver		Time Zone :	<not set=""></not>		_
					NTP Server:	America/Lima		1
					▼, Advance	America/Los_Angeles (Pacifi	c Time)	
9					Name	America/Maceio (Alagoas, S	ergipe)	
=						America/Managua		
						America/Manaus (E Amazoni	35)	
						America/Marigot		
•						America/Matamoros (US Co	tral Time - Cashuila Duranga Nucua Laon Tamaulinan paor US border)	
-0						America/Mazatian (Mountain	Time - S Reia, Navarit Sinaloa)	
						America/Menominee (Centra	I Time - Michigan - Dickinson, Gogebic, Iron & Menominee Counties)	
						America/Merida (Central Tim	e - Campeche, Yucatan)	
						America/Mexico City (Centra	ai Time - most locations)	
						America/Miquelon		_
						America/Moncton (Atlantic T	ime - New Brunswick)	
						America/Monterrey (Mexicar	n Central Time - Coahuila, Durango, Nuevo Leon, Tamaulipas away from US border)
						America/Montevideo		
						America/Montreal (Eastern T	ime - Quebec - most locations)	
						America/Montserrat		
						America/Nassau		
						America/New_York (Eastern	Time)	
						America/Nipigon (Eastern Tir	ne - Ontario & Quebec - places that did not observe DST 1967-1973)	
						America/Nome (Alaska Time	- west Alaska)	
						America/Noronha (Atlantic is	lands)	
						America/North_Dakota/Cent	er (Central Time - North Dakota - Oliver County)	
						America/North_Dakota/New	_Salem (Central Time - North Dakota - Morton County (except Mandan area))	
						America/Ojinaga (US Mounta	in Time - Chihuahua near US border)	
						America/Panama		
						America/Pangnirtung (Easter	n Time - Pangnirtung, Nunavut)	
						America/Paramaribo		
🔒 Logge	d in as admin@192.168.164.50					America/Phoenix (Mountain	Standard Time - Arizona)	-

- 3. In the Properties pane, select the appropriate time zone in the Timezone menu.
- 4. Click Save Changes, and then click OK.
- 5. Click Add NTP Server.
- 6. Enter <<var_oob_ntp>> and click OK.

Add NTP Server	(?) ×
NTP Server : 192.168.168.254	
	OK Cancel

7. Click OK.

Configure Cisco UCS Servers

Edit Chassis Discovery Policy

Setting the discovery policy simplifies the addition of B-Series Cisco UCS chassis. To modify the chassis discovery policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Equipment tab in the navigation pane and select Policies in the list from the drop-down list.
- 2. Under Global Policies, set the Chassis/FEX Discovery Policy to match the minimum number of uplink ports that should be cabled between the chassis or fabric extenders (FEXes) and the fabric interconnects.
- 3. Set the Link Grouping Preference to Port Channel.



If varying numbers of links between chassis and the Fabric Interconnects will be used, leave Action set to 1 Link.

- 4. Leave other settings alone or change if appropriate to your environment.
- 5. Click Save Changes.
- 6. Click OK.

Enable Port Auto-Discovery Policy

Setting the port auto-discovery policy enables automatic discovery of Cisco UCS B-Series chassis server ports. To modify the port auto-discovery policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment, select All > Equipment in the Navigation Pane, and select the Policies tab.
- 2. Under Port Auto-Discovery Policy, set Auto Configure Server Port to Enabled.

Equipment

Main Topology View Fabric Interconnects Servers Thermal Decommissioned Firmware Management Policies Faults Dia	agnostics
Global Policies Autoconfig Policies Server Inheritance Policies Server Discovery Policies SEL Policy Power Groups Port Auto-Disc	covery Policy Security
Actions	
Properties	
Owner : Local	
Auto Configure Server Port : Disabled Enabled	



3. Click Save Changes and then click OK.

Enable Info Policy for Neighbor Discovery

Enabling the info policy enables Fabric Interconnect neighbor information to be displayed. To modify the info policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click Equipment, select All > Equipment in the Navigation Pane, and select the Policies tab.
- 2. Within the Global Policies sub-tab, scroll down to Info Policy and select Enabled for Action.

Info Policy							
Action :	O Disabled Enabled						

- 3. Click Save Changes and then click OK.
- 4. Under Equipment, select Fabric Interconnect A (primary). Select the Neighbors tab. CDP information is shown under the LAN tab and LLDP information is shown under the LLDP tab.

Configure Unified Ports

The Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnects will have a slider mechanism within the Cisco UCS Manager GUI interface that will control the first 8 ports starting from the first port, allowing the selection of the first 4, or all 8 of the unified ports.

To enable the fibre channel ports, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Equipment tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary)
- 3. Select Configure Unified Ports.
- 4. Click Yes on the pop-up window warning that changes to the fixed module will require a reboot of the fabric interconnect and changes to the expansion module will require a reboot of that module.
- 5. Within the Configured Fixed Ports pop-up window move the gray slider bar from the left to the right to select either the first 4 or all 8 of the ports to be set as FC Uplinks.

	ka kakaraban			
The position of the slider deterr All the ports to the left of the sli	nines the type of the pr der are Fibre Channel r	orts. ports (Purple), while the ports to the right are Etherne	t ports (Blue).	
Port	Transport	If Role or Port Channel Membership	Desired If Role	
Port 1	ether	Unconfigured	FC Uplink	
Port 2	ether	Unconfigured	FC Uplink	
Port 3	ether	Unconfigured	FC Uplink	
Port 4	ether	Unconfigured	FC Uplink	
Port 5	ether	Unconfigured		
Port 6	ether	Unconfigured		
Port 7	ether	Unconfigured		
Port 8	ether	Unconfigured		

6. Click OK to continue

- 7. Click Yes within the subsequent warning pop-up and wait for reboot to complete.
- 8. Log back into UCSM when available.
- 9. Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect B (primary).
- 10. Select Configure Unified Ports.
- 11. Click Yes on the pop-up window warning that changes to the fixed module will require a reboot of the fabric interconnect and changes to the expansion module will require a reboot of that module.
- 12. Within the Configured Fixed Ports pop-up window move the gray slider bar from the left to the right to select the same 4 or 8 ports to be set as FC Uplinks.
- 13. Click OK to continue.
- 14. Click Yes within the subsequent warning pop-up and wait for reboot to complete.

Enable Server and Uplink Ports

To enable server and uplink ports, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Equipment tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Equipment > Fabric Interconnects > Fabric Interconnect A (primary) > Fixed Module.
- 3. Expand FC Ports
- 4. Select the ports that are connected to the VSP, right-click them, and select "Configure as FC Storage Port."

æ	Fabric Interconnects	Fabric Interconnects / Fabric Interconnect A / Fixed Module / FC Ports								
		FC Ports								
-	 ▼ Fabric Interconnect A (subordinate) 	Te Advanced Filter	🛧 Export 🛛 🚔 Print	All Vnconfi	gured Vetwork	✓ Storage ✓ Monito	ท	₽		
무	▶ Fans	Slot	Port ID	WWPN	If Role	If Type	Overall Status Admin State			
	▼ Fixed Module	1	1	20:01:00:DE:FB:	Network	Physical	Enable			
<u>_</u>	 Ethernet Ports 	1	2	20:02:00:DE:FB:	Network	Physical	Disable			
	FC Ports	1	3	20:03:00:DE:FB:	Network	Physical	Configure as Uplink Port			
	▶ PSUs	1	4	20:04:00:DE:FB:	Network	Physical	Configure as FC Storage Port			
_	► Fabric Interconnect B (primary						Сору			
							Copy XML			
20										

5. Select ports 53 and 54 that are connected to the Cisco Nexus switches, right-click them, and select Configure as Uplink Port.
| Fans
Fixed Module
Ethermet Ports
FC Ports
PSUs
abric Interconnect B (subordinate) | Slot
1
1
1 | Aggr. Port ID
0
0
0 | Port ID
37
38
39 | MAC
00:DE:FB:FF:FE:
00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | If Role
Unconfigured
Unconfigured | If Type
Physical | Overall Status Adr
V Sfp Not Pres_ | min State Peer
Disabled | |
|--|---|--|---|--|--|---|--|--|--|
| Fixed Module Ethemet Ports FC Ports PSUs bric Interconnect B (subordinate) | | 0
0
0 | 37
38
39 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE:
00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured
Unconfigured | Physical | V Sfp Not Pres 4 | Disabled | |
| Ethemet Ports FC Ports PSUs bric Interconnect B (subordinate) | 1 | 0
0
0 | 38
39 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Obusional | | | |
| FC Ports PSUs bric Interconnect B (subordinate) | 1 | 0
0 | 39 | | | Physical | V Sfp Not Pres | Disabled | |
| PSUs
abric Interconnect B (subordinate) | 1 | 0 | | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physical | V Sfp Not Pres | Disabled | |
| abric Interconnect B (subordinate) | 1 | | 40 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physical | V Sfp Not Pres | Disabled | |
| | 4 | 0 | 41 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physical | V Sfp Not Pres | Disabled | |
| | 3 | 0 | 42 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physical | V Sfp Not Pres | Disabled | |
| | -1 | 0 | 43 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physical | Vor uno 1 | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 44 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | | pled | |
| | 31 | 0 | 45 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | | aled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 46 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | Configure as Uplink Port | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 47 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | Configure as FCoE Uplink Port | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 48 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 49 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | Configure as Appliance Port | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 50 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 51 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | | pled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 52 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physic | | bled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 53 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physica | Liscontoure Admin Down | Uisabled | |
| | 1 | 0 | 54 | 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | Unconfigured | Physical | Admin Down | Disabled | |
| | | 1
1
1
1
1
1
1
1
1
1 | 1 0
1 0
1 0
1 0
1 0
1 0
1 0
1 0
1 0 | 1 0 46 1 0 47 1 0 48 1 0 49 1 0 50 1 0 51 1 0 52 1 0 53 1 0 54 | 1 0 46 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 47 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 48 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 49 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 50 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 51 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 52 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 53 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: 1 0 54 00:DE:FB:FF:FE: | 104600.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured104700.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured104800.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured104900.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured105000.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured105100.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured105200.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured105300.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured105400.DE:FB:FF.FE:Unconfigured | 104600:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic104700:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic104800:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic104900:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic105000:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic105100:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic105200:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic105300:DE:FB:FF:E:UnconfiguredPhysic105400:DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysica | 104600.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicConfigure as EVER Port104700.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicConfigure as EVER Port104800.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicConfigure as EVER Port104800.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicConfigure as EVER Port104900.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicConfigure as EVER Port105000.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicUnconfigure as EVER Port105100.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicUnconfigure EVER Uplink Port105200.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicUnconfigure105300.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicUnconfigure105400.DE:FB:FF:FE:UnconfiguredPhysicAdmin Down | 1 0 46 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Configure as Uplink Port Hed 1 0 47 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Configure as CoEl Uplink Port Hed 1 0 48 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Configure as FOEE Uplink Port Hed 1 0 48 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Configure as FOEE Uplink Port Hed 1 0 49 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Configure as Appliance Port Hed 1 0 51 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Unconfigure POEE Uplink Port Hed 1 0 52 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Unconfigure POEE Uplink Port Hed 1 0 53 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Unconfigure POEE Uplink Port Hed 1 0 54 00:DE:F8:FF:FE: Unconfigured Physic Unconfigure POEE Uplink Port Hed 1 0 54 00: |

- 6. Click Yes to confirm uplink ports and click OK.
- 7. Repeat steps 1-6 for Fabric B ports.

Create Pools

Create MAC Address Pools

To configure the necessary MAC address pools for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Pools > root.



In this procedure, two MAC address pools are created; one for each switching fabric.

- 3. Right-click MAC Pools under the root organization.
- 4. Select Create MAC Pool to create the MAC address pool.
- 5. Enter MAC_Pool_A as the name of the MAC pool.
- 6. Optional: Enter a description for the MAC pool.
- 7. Select Sequential as the option for Assignment Order.

		Create MAC Pool	? ×
0	Define Name and Description	Name : MAC_Pool_A	
	Add MAC Addresses	Description : Assignment Order : Default Sequential	
		< Prev Next > Finish C	ancel

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Click Add.

么

10. Specify a starting MAC address.

For Cisco UCS deployments, the recommendation is to place 0A in the next-to-last octet of the starting MAC address to identify all of the MAC addresses as fabric A addresses. In our example, we have carried forward the of information of also embedding and FI number reference of 54(for UCS 6454) giving us 00:25:B5:54:0A:00 as our first MAC address.

11. Specify a size for the MAC address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

Create a Blo	ock of MAC Addresses	? ×
First MAC Address :	00:25:B5:54:0A:00 Size : 32 🜲	
To ensure uniqueness prefix: 00:25:B5:xx:xx:xx	of MACs in the LAN fabric, you are strongly encouraged to use t	ne following MAC
	ОК	Cancel

- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Click Finish.
- 14. In the confirmation message, click OK.
- 15. Right-click MAC Pools under the root organization.
- 16. Select Create MAC Pool to create the MAC address pool.
- 17. Enter MAC_Pool_B as the name of the MAC pool.
- 18. Optional: Enter a description for the MAC pool.

		Create MAC Pool	? ×
0	Define Name and Description	Name : MAC_Pool_B	
	Add MAC Addresses	Description : Assignment Order : O Default Sequential	
		< Prev Next > Finish Can	cel

- 19. Click Next.
- 20. Click Add.
- 21. Specify a starting MAC address.

For Cisco UCS deployments, it is recommended to place 0B in the next to last octet of the starting MAC address to identify all the MAC addresses in this pool as fabric B addresses. Once again, we have carried forward the of information of also embedding and FI number reference of 54 giving us 00:25:B5:54:0A:00 as our first MAC address.

22. Specify a size for the MAC address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

Create a Block of MAC Addre	esses ?×
First MAC Address : 00:25:B5:54:0B:00 Si	ze: 32 🜲
To ensure uniqueness of MACs in the LAN fabric, you prefix: 00:25:B5:xx:xx:xx	are strongly encouraged to use the following MAC
	OK Cancel

- 23. Click OK.
- 24. Click Finish.
- 25. In the confirmation message, click OK.

Create UUID Suffix Pool

To configure the necessary universally unique identifier (UUID) suffix pool for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Pools > root.
- 3. Right-click UUID Suffix Pools.
- 4. Select Create UUID Suffix Pool.
- 5. Enter UUID_Pool as the name of the UUID suffix pool.

		Create UUID Suffix Pool	? ×
0	Define Name and Description	Name : UUID_Pool	
	Add UUID Blocks	Description : Prefix : ① Derived ① other Assignment Order : ⑦ Default ④ Sequential	
		< Prov Next > Finish Can	:el

- 6. Optional: Enter a description for the UUID suffix pool.
- 7. Keep the prefix at the derived option.
- 8. Select Sequential for the Assignment Order.
- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Click Add to add a block of UUIDs.

Create a Block of UUID Suffixes ? >					
From :	0000-540000000001	Size : 32 🌲			
		OK Cancel			

Þ

The starting From number (0000-54) has been adjusted to give it a differentiator from other UCS domains that may be adjacent.

- 11. Specify a size for the UUID block that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.
- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Click Finish.
- 14. Click OK.

Create Server Pool

To configure the necessary server pool for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:



Consider creating unique server pools to achieve the granularity that is required in your environment.

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Pools > root.
- 3. Right-click Server Pools.
- 4. Select Create Server Pool.
- 5. Enter Infra_Pool as the name of the server pool.

		Create Server Pool	? ×
0	Set Name and Description	Name : Infra_Pool	
2	Add Servers	Description :	
		< Prev Next > Finish Can	cel

- 6. Optional: Enter a description for the server pool.
- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Select two (or more) servers to be used for the VMware cluster and click >> to add them to the Infra_Pool server pool.

		Create Server	Pool				? ×
0	Set Name and Description	Se	ervers			Pooled Servers	
2	Add Servers			\$			\$
		1 1	U U F	32		No data available	
		1 2	U U F	32	>>		
		1 3	U 🖡 F	20	<<		
		1 4	U 🖡 F	16			
		1 5	U + F	20			
		1 6	U + F	12			
		1 8	U + F	20			
		Model: Serial Number: Vendor:	UCSB-B200-M5 FCH21147T2D Cisco Systems Inc			Model: Serial Number: Vendor:	
					< Pre	v Next > Finish Car	ncel

- 9. Click Finish.
- 10. Click OK.

Add a Block of IP Addresses for KVM Access

To create a block of IP addresses for in band server Keyboard, Video, Mouse (KVM) access in the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Pools > root > IP Pools.
- 3. Right-click IP Pool ext-mgmt and select Create Block of IPv4 Addresses.

Create Block of IPv4 Add	dresses	? ×
From : 192.168.168.101	Size : 12 +	
Primary DNS : 0.0.0.0	Secondary DNS : 0.0.0.0	
	ОК	Cancel

- 4. Enter the starting IP address of the block and the number of IP addresses required, and the subnet and gateway information.
- 5. Click OK to create the block of IPs.
- 6. Click OK.

Create a WWNN Pool

To configure the necessary WWNN pool for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps on Cisco UCS Manager:

- 1. Select the SAN tab.
- 2. Select Pools > root.
- 3. Right-click WWNN Pools under the root organization.
- 4. Select Create WWNN Pool to create the WWNN pool.
- 5. Enter WWNN_Pool for the name of the WWNN pool.
- 6. Optional: Enter a description for the WWNN pool.
- 7. Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

		Create WWNN Pool	? ×
0	Define Name and Description	Name : WWNN_Pool	
2	Add WWN Blocks	Description : Assignment Order : Default Sequential	
		< Prev Next > Finish Canc	el

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Click Add.
- 10. Modify the From field as necessary for the UCS Environment.

Modifications of the WWN block, as well as the WWPN and MAC Addresses, can convey identifying information for the Cisco UCS domain. Within the From field in our example, the 6th octet was changed from 00 to 54 to represent as identifying information for the 6454 Cisco UCS domain.



When you have multiple Cisco UCS domains sitting in adjacency, it is important that these blocks, the WWNN, WWPN, and MAC hold differing values between each set.

11. Specify a size of the WWNN block sufficient to support the available server resources.

Create WWN Block	? ×
From : 20:00:00:25:B5:54:00:00 Size	: 32
To ensure uniqueness of WWNs in the SAN fab the following WWN prefix:	ric, you are strongly encouraged to use
20:00:00:25:b5:xx:xx:xx	
	OK Cancel

- 12. Click OK.
- 13. Click Finish to create the WWNN Pool.
- 14. Click OK.

Create WWPN Pools

To configure the necessary WWPN pools for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the SAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Pools > root.
- 3. In this procedure, two WWPN pools are created, one for each switching fabric.
- 4. Right-click WWPN Pools under the root organization.
- 5. Select Create WWPN Pool to create the WWPN pool.
- 6. Enter WWPN_Pool_A as the name of the WWPN pool.
- 7. Optional: Enter a description for the WWPN pool.
- 8. Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

		Create WWPN Pool	? ×
0	Define Name and Description	Name : WWPN_Pool_A	
2	Add WWN Blocks	Description : Assignment Order : O Default Sequential	
		< Prev Next > Finish Car	ncel

- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Click Add.
- 11. Specify a starting WWPN.

For the solution, the recommendation is to place 0A in the next-to-last octet of the starting WWPN to identify all of the WWPNs as fabric A addresses. Merging this with the pattern we used for the WWNN, we see a WWPN block starting with 20:00:00:25:B5:54:0A:00.

12. Specify a size for the WWPN pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

Create WWN Block	$? \times$
From : 20:00:00:25:B5:54:0A:00 Size :	32 \$
To ensure uniqueness of WWNs in the SAN fabric, the following WWN prefix:	you are strongly encouraged to use
20:00:00:25:b5:xx:xx:xx	
	OK Cancel

- 13. Click OK.
- 14. Click Finish.
- 15. In the confirmation message, click OK.
- 16. Right-click WWPN Pools under the root organization.

- 17. Select Create WWPN Pool to create the WWPN pool.
- 18. Enter WWPN_Pool_B as the name of the WWPN pool.
- 19. Optional: Enter a description for the WWPN pool.
- 20. Select Sequential for Assignment Order.

		Create WWPN Pool	
0	Define Name and Description	Name : WWPN_Pool_B	
2	Add WWN Blocks	Description : Assignment Order : OEfault OSequential	
		< Prev Next > Finish Car	ncel

- 21. Click Next.
- 22. Click Add.

Ø

23. Specify a starting WWPN.

For the solution, the recommendation is to place 0B in the next-to-last octet of the starting WWPN to identify all of the WWPNs as fabric A addresses. Merging this with the pattern we used for the WWNN, we see a WWPN block starting with 20:00:00:25:B5:54:0B:00.

24. Specify a size for the WWPN address pool that is sufficient to support the available blade or server resources.

Create WWN Block	? × 1
From : 20:00:00:25:B5:54:0B:00	Size : 32 🜲
To ensure uniqueness of WWNs in the S the following WWN prefix:	AN fabric, you are strongly encouraged to use
20:00:00:25:b5:xx:xx:xx	
	OK Cancel

- 25. Click OK.
- 26. Click Finish.
- 27. In the confirmation message, click OK.

Set Packages and Policies

Create Host Firmware Package

Firmware management policies allow the administrator to select the corresponding packages for a given server configuration. These policies often include packages for adapter, BIOS, board controller, FC adapters, host bus adapter (HBA) option ROM, and storage controller properties.

To create a firmware management policy for a given server configuration in the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Expand Host Firmware Packages.
- 4. Select default.
- 5. In the Actions pane, select Modify Package Versions.
- 6. Select the version 4.o(2b)B for the Blade Package, and optionally set version 4.o(2b)C for the Rack Package.
- 7. Leave Excluded Components with only Local Disk selected.

Modify Package Versions	×
Blade Package : 4.0(2b)B Rack Package : 4.0(2b)C Service Pack : www.example.com Service Pack : www.example.com The images from Service Pack will take predict the predict of the predict take pred	• • edence over the images from Blade or Rack Package
Excluded Components:	
Adapter BIOS Board Controller CIMC FC Adapters Flex Flash Controller GPUs HBA Option ROM Host NIC Host NIC Option ROM Local Disk NVME Mswitch Firmware PSU Pci Switch Firmware	
	OK Apply Cancel Help

8. Click OK to modify the host firmware package and OK again to acknowledge the changes.

Create Server Pool Qualification Policy (Optional)

To create an optional server pool qualification policy for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

This example creates a policy for Cisco UCS B200 M5 servers for a server pool.

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.

- 3. Right-click Server Pool Policy Qualifications.
- 4. Select Create Server Pool Policy Qualification.
- **5.** Name the policy UCS-B200M5.
- 6. Select Create Server PID Qualifications.
- 7. Select Cisco UCS-B200-M5 from the PID drop-down list.

Create Server Pool Po	licy Qualification	? ×
Naming		
Name : UCS-B200M5		
Description :		
This server pool policy qualification will	apply to new or re-discovered servers. Existing servers are not qualified until they are re-discovered	
Actions	Qualifications	
Create Adapter Qualifications	+ - Ty Advanced Filter 🔶 Export 🚭 Print	\$
Create Chassis/Server Qualifications Create Memory Qualifications	Create Server PID Qualifications ? X Speed Stepping	Power Gro
Create CPU/Cores Qualifications	PID : <pre><pre><pre><pre>PID : </pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><pre><</pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre>	
Create Storage Qualifications	UCSB-B200-CONN	
Create Server PID Qualifications	UCSB-B400-CONN	
Create Power Group Quaincations	UCSB-B400-CAP	
	UCSB-B200-CAP	
	UCS-DIMM-MAP	
	UCSB-B480-M5	
	UCSB-B420-M4	
	UCSB-B200-M5	
	UCSC-C3X60-SVRNB	
	UCSB-B420-M3	
	UCSB-EX-M4-3	
	UCSB-B22-M3	
	UCSC-C3X60-M4SRB	Cancel
	UCSC-C3K-M4SRB	
	UCS-S3260-M5SRB	2
	UCSB-EX-M4-1	

- 8. Click OK.
- 9. Optionally, select additional qualifications to refine server selection parameters for the server pool.
- 10. Click OK to create the policy then click OK for the confirmation.

Download the Image for ESXi 6.7 U1

The VMware Cisco Custom Image will need to be downloaded for use during installation by manual access to the UCS KVM vMedia, or through a vMedia Policy explained in the following subsection.

To download the Cisco Custom Image, follow these steps:

- 1. Click the following link: <u>VMware vSphere Hypervisor Cisco Custom Image (ESXi) 6.7 U1.</u>
- 2. You will need a user id and password on vmware.com to download this software.
- 3. Download the .iso file.

Create vMedia Policy for VMware ESXi 6.7 U1 Install Boot (optional, if manually attaching ISO through KVM)

A separate HTTP web server is required to automate the availability of the ESXi image to each Service Profile on first power on. The creation of this web server is not included in this document but can be any existing web server capable of serving files through HTTP that are accessible on the OOB network that the ESXi image can be placed upon.

To create a vMedia Policy, place the Cisco Custom Image VMware ESXi 6.7 U1 ISO on the HTTP server and follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, select Servers.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click vMedia Policies.
- 4. Select Create vMedia Policy.
- 5. Name the policy ESXi-6.7U1-HTTP.
- 6. Enter "Mounts ISO for ESXi 6.7 U1" in the Description field.
- 7. Click Add.

<u>6</u>

- 8. Name the mount ESXi-6.7U1-HTTP.
- 9. Select the CDD Device Type.
- 10. Select the HTTP Protocol.
- 11. Enter the IP Address of the web server.

Since DNS server IPs were not entered into the KVM IP earlier, it is necessary to enter the IP of the web server instead of the hostname.

- 12. Leave "None" selected for Image Name Variable.
- 13. Enter VMware_ESXi_6.7.0_10302608_Custom_Cisco_6.7.1.1.iso as the Remote File name.
- 14. Enter the web server path to the ISO file in the Remote Path field.

Create vMed	ia Mount	? ×
Name	: ESXi-6.7U1-HTTP	
Description	:	
Device Type		
Protocol		
Hostname/IP Address	: 192.168.168.155	
Image Name Variable	: • None O Service Profile Name	
Remote File	: VMware_ESXi_6.7.0_10302608_Custom_Cisco_6.7	
Remote Path	: /software/vmware	
Username	:	
Password	:	
Remap on Eject	: 🗆	
	ОКС	ancel

- 15. Click OK to create the vMedia Mount.
- 16. Click OK then click OK again to complete creating the vMedia Policy.



Create Server BIOS Policy

To create a server BIOS policy for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click BIOS Policies.
- 4. Select Create BIOS Policy.
- 5. Enter VM-Host as the BIOS policy name.

Create BIOS	S Policy	; ×
Name	: VM-Host	
Description	:	
Reboot on BIOS Set	tings Change : 🗖	
		OK Cancel

- 6. Select and right-click the newly created BIOS Policy.
- 7. Within the Main tab of the Policy:
 - a. Change CDN Control to enabled.
 - b. Change the Quiet Boot setting to disabled.

	rents	
ctions		
elete		
how Policy Usage		
se Global		
roperties		
Name : VM-Host		
Description :		
Owner : Local		
Reboot on BIOS Settings Change:		
Advanced Filter 🔶 Export 🎂 Print		
BIOS Tokens	Settings	
CDN Control	Enabled	▼
Front panel lockout	CDN Control	▼
POST error pause	Platform Default	Υ.
Quiet Boot	Disabled	₹.
Resume on AC power loss	Platform Default	v

- 8. Click the Advanced tab, leaving the Processor tab selected within the Advanced tab.
- 9. Set the following within the Processor tab:
 - a. DRAM Clock Throttling -> Performance
 - b. Frequency Floor Override -> Enabled
 - c. Processor C State -> Disabled

ain Advanced Boot Options Server Management Events		Tausted Distance - Occubics Occ	
inter Directed ID RAS Memory Senai Port USB PCI	QPI LOW and Pole Sibls	Husted Platform Graphics Conliguration	
	Sottingo		
Alforda	Settings		-
	Platform Defau		
CPU Hardware Power Management	Platform Defau		*
CPU Performance	Platform Defau	JIt	¥,
Core Multi Processing	Platform Defau	JIt	7
DRAM Clock Throttling	Performance		7
Direct Cache Access	Platform Defau	ılt	.
Energy Performance Tuning	Platform Defau	JIT	▼ ,
Enhanced Intel SpeedStep Tech	Platform Defau	ılt	T
Execute Disable Bit	Platform Defau	ılt	T
Frequency Floor Override	Enabled		Υ.
Intel HyperThreading Tech	Platform Defau	lt	▼
Intel Turbo Boost Tech	Platform Defau	ılt	v
Intel Virtualization Technology	Platform Defau	ılt	v
Channel Interleaving	Platform Defau	ılt	T
Memory Interleaving	Platform Defau	ılt	7
Rank Interleaving	Platform Defau	ılt	V
Local X2 Apic	Platform Defau	ılt	V
Max Variable MTRR Setting	Platform Defau	ilt	v
P STATE Coordination	Platform Defau	Jit	v
Package C State Limit	Platform Defau	lt	V
Processor C State	Disabled		7
	0		

10. Scroll down to the remaining Processor options and select:

- a. Processor C1E -> disabled
- b. Processor C₃ Report -> disabled
- c. Processor C7 Report -> disabled
- d. Energy Performance -> performance

rocessor Intel Directed IO RAS Memory Serial Port USB PCI QF	LOM and PCIe Slots Trusted Platform Graphics Configuration	
Advanced Filter 🔶 Export 💮 Print		
IOS Tokens	Settings	
Memory Interleaving	Platform Default	V
Rank Interleaving	Platform Default	V
Local X2 Apic	Platform Default	V
Max Variable MTRR Setting	Platform Default	V
P STATE Coordination	Platform Default	¥ 2
Package C State Limit	Platform Default	V
Processor C State	Disabled	▼
Processor C1E	Disabled	Ţ.
Processor C3 Report	Disabled	Ţ
Processor C6 Report	Platform Default	Υ.
Processor C7 Report	Disabled	Ϋ́,
Processor CMCI	Platform Default	V
Power Technology	Platform Default	V
Energy Performance	Performance	Ţ,
Adjacent Cache Line Prefetcher	Platform Default	v
DCU IP Prefetcher	Platform Default	Υ,
DCU Streamer Prefetch	Platform Default	¥ 2
Hardware Prefetcher	Platform Default	V
Demand Scrub	Platform Default	y
Patrol Scrub	Platform Default	V
Workload Configuration	Platform Default	V

- 11. Click the RAS Memory tab and select:
 - a. LV DDR Mode -> performance-mode

Policies / root / BIOS Policies / VM-Host	
Main Advanced Boot Options Server Management Events	
Processor Intel Directed IO KAS Memory Serial Port USB PCI UPI LOM and	PCIe Slots Trusted Platform Graphics Connguration
Ty Advanced Filter	¢
BIOS Tokens	Settings
DDR3 Voltage Selection	Platform Default
DRAM Refresh Rate	Platform Default
LV DDR Mode	Performance Mode
Mirroring Mode	Platform Default
NUMA optimized	Platform Default
Memory RAS configuration	Platform Default
🕀 Add 🔞	elete 🕕 Info
	Save Changes Reset Values

- 12. Click Save Changes.
- 13. Click OK.

Update the Default Maintenance Policy

To update the default Maintenance Policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Select Maintenance Policies > default.
- 4. Change the Reboot Policy to User Ack.
- 5. (Optional: Click "On Next Boot" to delegate maintenance windows to server owners).

Æ	Policies 👻	Policies / root / Maintenance Policies / d	efault		
8	✓ BIOS Policies	General Events			
	SRIOV				
暴	usNIC	Actions	Properties		
	VM-Host		Name	default	
1	▼ Boot Policies	Show Policy Usage	Description	:	
	Boot Policy default		Owner	Local	
	Boot Policy diag		Soft Shutdown Timer	: 150 Secs 🔻	
	Boot Policy utility		Storage Config. Deployment Policy		
	 Diagnostics Policies 		Storage Coning. Deproyment Policy.		7
	 Graphics Card Policies 		Reboot Policy	Immediate User Ack Timer Automatic	
	✓ Host Firmware Packages		 On Next Boot 	(Apply pending changes at next reboot.)	
	default				
20	 IPMI Access Profiles 				
	 KVM Management Policies 				
	 Local Disk Config Policies 				
	default				
	SAN-Boot				
	✓ Maintenance Policies				
	default				
	Management Firmware Packages				
	 Memory Policy 				
	 Power Control Policies 				
	default				
	No-Power-Cap				
	 Power Sync Policies 				
	 Scrub Policies 				
	 Serial over LAN Policies 				
	Server Pool Policies				
	 Server Pool Policy Qualifications 				
	all-chassis				
	UCS-B200M5				
	 Threshold Policies 				
	iSCSI Authentication Profiles				
	▼ vMedia Policies				Dura Character Denot Webser
	vMedia Policy ESXi-6.5-HTTP				Save changes Reset values

- 6. Click Save Changes.
- 7. Click OK to accept the change.

Create Local Disk Configuration Policy

A local disk configuration for the Cisco UCS environment is necessary if the servers in the environment do not have a local disk.



To create a local disk configuration policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click Local Disk Config Policies.
- 4. Select Create Local Disk Configuration Policy.
- 5. Enter SAN-Boot as the local disk configuration policy name.
- 6. Change the mode to No Local Storage.

7. Click OK to create the local disk configuration policy.

Name	: SAN-	Boot			
Description	:				
Mode	: No Loo	cal Storage	Ŧ		
FlexFlash		-			
FlexFlash State	: (Dis	able () Enable			
FlexFlash State is disab lease ensure SD cards a FlexFlash RAID Reporting	ed, SD cards wi e not in use bef State : ① Dis	ill become unava ore disabling the able () Enable	lable immediately. FlexFlash State.		
			-		
FlexFlash Removable Sta	te · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	s () No (No C	hange		
FlexFlash Removable S lease ensure SD cards a	tate is changed, e not in use bef	, SD cards will be ore changing the	come unavailable FlexFlash Remova	temporarily. ble State.	
FlexFlash Removable S lease ensure SD cards a	tate is changed e not in use bef	, SD cards will be	come unavailable FlexFlash Remova	temporarily. Ible State.	
FlexFlash Removable S lease ensure SD cards a	tate is changed	, SD cards will be ore changing the	scome unavailable FlexFlash Remova	temporarily. ble State.	
FlexFlash Removable S lease ensure SD cards a	tate is changed e not in use bef	, SD cards will be ore changing the	ecome unavailable FlexFlash Remova	temporarily. ble State.	
FlexFlash Removable S lease ensure SD cards a	tate is changed e not in use bef	, SD cards will be ore changing the	ecome unavailable FlexFlash Remova	temporarily. ble State.	

8. Click OK.

Create Power Control Policy

To create a power control policy for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click Power Control Policies.
- 4. Select Create Power Control Policy.
- 5. Enter No-Power-Cap as the power control policy name.
- 6. Change the power capping setting to No Cap.

Create Pow	er Control Policy	? ×
Name :	No-Power-Cap	
Description :		
Fan Speed Policy :	Any	
Power Capping		
Visitin its power gro you choose no-ca No Cap ca Cisco UCS Manager more power than is c regardless of their pr	p, the server is exempt from all power capping. ap only enforces power capping when the servers in a power gr urrently available. With sufficient power, all servers run at full iority.	oup require capacity
	ОК	Cancel

- 7. Click OK to create the power control policy.
- 8. Click OK.

Create Network Control Policy for Cisco Discovery Protocol

To create a network control policy that enables Cisco Discovery Protocol (CDP) on virtual network ports, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click Network Control Policies.
- 4. Select Create Network Control Policy.
- 5. Enter Enable CDP as the policy name.
- 6. For CDP, select the Enabled option.
- 7. Click OK to create the network control policy.

Create Ne	twork Control Policy	? ×
Name	: Enable_CDP	1
Description	:	
CDP	: Olisabled • Enabled	
MAC Register Mo	de : 💿 Only Native Vlan 🔿 All Host Vlans	
Action on Uplink F	ail : O Link Down O Warning	
MAC Security		
Forge : 💿 Allo	w O Deny	
LLDP		
	ОК Са	ncel

8. Click OK.

Configure Cisco UCS LAN Connectivity

Create Uplink Port Channels

To configure the necessary port channels out of the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.



- 2. Under LAN > LAN Cloud, expand the Fabric A tree.
- 3. Right-click Port Channels.
- 4. Select Create Port Channel.
- 5. Enter a unique ID for the port channel, (15 in our example to correspond with the upstream Nexus port channel).
- 6. With 15 selected, enter vPC-15-Nexus as the name of the port channel.

		Create Port Channel	? ×
0	Set Port Channel Name	ID : 15	
2	Add Ports	Name : VPC-15-Nexus	
		C Prov Next > Finish Ca	ncel

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Select the following ports to be added to the port channel:
 - a. Slot ID 1 and port 53
 - b. Slot ID 1 and port 54

		Create Port Channel								? ×	
0	Set Port Channel Name	Ports						Ports in the	port channe	1	
0	Add Ports		Slot ID	Aggr. Po	Port	MAC		Slot ID	Aggr. Po	Port	MAC
			1	0	53	00:DE:F			No data	available	
			1	0	54	00:DE:F	>>				
							<<				
							< Prev		ext >	inish	Cancel

- 9. Click >> to add the ports to the port channel.
- 10. Click Finish to create the port channel.
- 11. Click OK.
- 12. In the navigation pane, under LAN > LAN Cloud, expand the fabric B tree.
- 13. Right-click Port Channels.
- 14. Select Create Port Channel.
- 15. Enter a unique ID for the port channel, (16 in our example to correspond with the upstream Nexus port channel).
- 16. With 16 selected, enter vPC-16-Nexus as the name of the port channel.

		Create Port Channel	? ×
0	Set Port Channel Name	ID : 16	
2	Add Ports	Name : VPC-16-Nexus	
		< Prov Next> Finish Ca	ncel

- 17. Click Next.
- 18. Select the following ports to be added to the port channel:
 - a. Slot ID 1 and port 53
 - b. Slot ID 1 and port 54

		Create Port Channel ? ×									? ×	
1	Set Port Channel Name			Po	orts			[Ports in the	port chann	el
2	Add Ports		Slot ID	Aggr. Po	Port	MAC			Slot ID	Aggr. Po	Port	MAC
			1	0	53	00:DE:F				No data	available	
			1	0	54	00:DE:F	>>					
							<<					
								< Prev		kt>	Finish	Cancel

- 19. Click >> to add the ports to the port channel.
- 20. Click Finish to create the port channel.
- 21. Click OK.

When using QSFP+ passive copper cables (e.g. QSFP-100G-CU1M), setting the appropriate port speed for the configured port channel interfaces may be needed depending upon switch and switch ports used.

Create VLANs

2

To configure the necessary virtual local area networks (VLANs) for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.



- 2. Select LAN > LAN Cloud.
- 3. Right-click VLANs.
- 4. Select Create VLANs.
- 5. Enter Native as the name of the VLAN to be used as the native VLAN.
- 6. Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.

7. Enter the native VLAN ID.

8. Keep the Sharing Type as None.

Create VLANs	? ×
VLAN Name/Prefix : Native	
Multicast Policy Name : <pre></pre> <pre></pre> <pre> Create Multicast Policy</pre>	
● Common/Global ◯ Fabric A ◯ Fabric B ◯ Both Fabrics Configured Differently	
You are creating global VLANs that map to the same VLAN IDs in all available fabrics. Enter the range of VLAN IDs.(e.g. " 2009-2019" , " 29,35,40-45" , " 23" , " 23,34-45")	
VLAN IDs: 2	
Sharing Type : None Primary Isolated Community	
Check Overlap OK	Cancel

- 9. Click OK and then click OK again.
- 10. Expand the list of VLANs in the navigation pane, right-click the newly created Native VLAN and select Set as Native VLAN.
- 11. Click Yes and then click OK.
- 12. Right-click VLANs.
- 13. Select Create VLANs.
- 14. Enter IB-Mgmt as the name of the VLAN to be used for management traffic.
- 15. Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.
- 16. Enter the In-Band management VLAN ID.
- 17. Keep the Sharing Type as None.

Create VLANs	? ×
VLAN Name/Prefix : IB-Mgmt Multicast Policy Name : <not set=""> ▼ Create Multicast Policy Create Multicast Policy</not>	
You are creating global VLANs that map to the same VLAN IDs in all available fabrics. Enter the range of VLAN IDs.(e.g. "2009-2019", "29,35,40-45", "23", "23,34-45") VLAN IDs : 119	
Sharing Type : None Primary Isolated Community 	
Check Overlap OK Ca	ncel

- 18. Click OK and then click OK again.
- 19. Right-click VLANs.
- 20. Select Create VLANs.
- 21. Enter ${\tt vMotion}$ as the name of the VLAN to be used for vMotion.
- 22. Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.
- 23. Enter the vMotion VLAN ID.
- 24. Keep the Sharing Type as None.

Create VLANs	? ×
VLAN Name/Prefix : vMotion Multicast Policy Name : <not set=""> • • Create Multicast Policy • Common/Global · Fabric A · Fabric B · Both Fabrics Configured Differently You are creating global VLANs that map to the same VLAN IDs in all available fabrics. Enter the range of VLAN IDs.(e.g. " 2009-2019", " 29,35,40-45", " 23", " 23,34-45") VLAN IDs : 1000 Sharing Type : • None · Primary · Isolated · Community</not>	
Check Overlap OK C	ancel

- 25. Click OK and then click OK again.
- 26. Right-click VLANs.
- 27. Select Create VLANs.
- 28. Enter VM-App- as the prefix of the VLANs to be used for VM Traffic.
- 29. Keep the Common/Global option selected for the scope of the VLAN.
- 30. Enter the VM-Traffic VLAN ID range.
- 31. Keep the Sharing Type as None.

Create VLANs	? ×
VLAN Name/Prefix : VM-App-	
Multicast Policy Name : <pre></pre> <pre> </pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <pre> <!--</td--><td></td></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre></pre>	
Common/Global Fabric A Fabric B Both Fabrics Configured Differently	
You are creating global VLANs that map to the same VLAN IDs in all available fabrics. Enter the range of VLAN IDs.(e.g. " 2009-2019" , " 29,35,40-45" , " 23" , " 23,34-45")	
VLAN IDs : 201-203	
Sharing Type :	
Check Overlap OK Ca	ncel

- 32. Click OK and then click OK again.
- 33. Repeat as needed for any additional VLANs created on the upstream Nexus switches.

Create vNIC Templates

To create the multiple virtual network interface card (vNIC) templates for the Cisco UCS environment, follow the steps in this section.

Create Management vNICs

For the vNIC_Mgmt_A Template, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click vNIC Templates.
- 4. Select Create vNIC Template.
- 5. Enter vNIC Mgmt A as the vNIC template name.
- 6. Keep Fabric A selected.
- 7. Select Primary Template for the Redundancy Type.

8. Leave Peer Redundancy Template as <not set>

ß

Redundancy Type and specification of Redundancy Template are configuration options to later allow changes to the Primary Template to automatically adjust onto the Secondary Template.

- 9. Under Target, make sure that the VM checkbox is not selected.
- 10. Select Updating Template as the Template Type.
- 11. Under VLANs, select the checkboxes for IB-Mgmt, vMotion, and Native VLANs.

Create vNIC Te	mplate			?
Name : Description :	vNIC_Mgmt_A]	
Fabric ID : Redundancy	 Fabric A 	⊖ Fabric B		Enable Failover
Redundancy Type Peer Redundancy Temp!	: No Redundancy () ate : <pre></pre>	Primary Template 🔿 Secon	dary Template	
arget				
✓ Adapter VM				
Warning				
If VM is selected, a port pr If a port profile of the same Template Type :	rofile by the same name will e name exists, and updating Initial Template () Updat	be created. template is selected, it will be ing Template	overwritten	
VLANs VLAN Group)S			
🔨 Advanced Filter 🔶 Exp	oort 🚔 Print			¢
Select	Name		Native VLAN	
	default		0	
\checkmark	IB-Mgmt		0	
\checkmark	Native		۲	
	VM-Ann-20	11	0	
				OK Cancel

- 12. Set Native as the native VLAN.
- 13. Leave vNIC Name selected for the CDN Source.
- **14**. For MTU, enter 9000.
- **15**. In the MAC Pool list, select MAC_Pool_A.
- 16. In the Network Control Policy list, select Enable CDP.

Create vNIC Ten	nplate		? >
Warning			
If VM is selected, a port prof If a port profile of the same r	ile by the same name will be created. name exists, and updating template is sel	acted, it will be overwritten	
Template Type :	Initial Template () Updating Template		
VLANs VLAN Groups			
Te Advanced Filter 🔶 Expor	t 🚔 Print		\$
Select	Name	Native VLAN	
	Native	۲	
•	VM-App-201	0	
	VM-App-202	0	
	VM-App-203	0	
\checkmark	vMotion	0	
reate VLAN			
CDN Source : 💽	vNIC Name OUser Defined		
MTU : 90	000		
MAC Pool : N	IAC_Pool_A(32/32) 🔻		
QoS Policy : <	not set> 🔻		
Network Control Policy : E	nable_CDP 🔻		
Pin Group : <	ot set> 🔻		

- 17. Click OK to create the vNIC template.
- 18. Click OK.

For the vNIC_Mgmt_B Template, follow these steps:

- 1. In the navigation pane, select the LAN tab.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click vNIC Templates.
- 4. Select Create vNIC Template
- 5. Enter vNIC_Mgmt_B as the vNIC template name.
- 6. Select Fabric B.
- 7. Select Secondary Template for Redundancy Type.
- 8. For the Peer Redundancy Template drop-down, select vNIC_Mgmt_A.
¢

With Peer Redundancy Template selected, Template Type, VLANs, CDN Source, MTU, and Network Control Policy are all pulled from the Primary Template.

9. Under Target, make sure the VM checkbox is not selected.

Create vNIC Temp	late		? ×
Name : VNIC Description : Fabric ID : Redundancy	_Mgmt_B Fabric A	 Fabric B 	Enable Failover
Redundancy Type : Peer Redundancy Template : Target Adapter VM Warning	No Redundancy Primary	Template () Secondary	Template
If VM is selected, a port profile I If a port profile of the same nam Template Type : VLANs VLAN Groups VLANs Export	by the same name will be create e exists, and updating template ial Template O Updating Temp	ed. is selected, it will be over plate	written
Select	Name	Nati	ve VLAN
	default	0	
	IB-Mgmt	0	
	Native	0	
	VM-Δnn-201	0	OK Cancel

10. In the MAC Pool list, select MAC_Pool_B.

🌪 Advanced Filter 🛛 🛧 Expo	ort 🖷 Print		¢
Select	Name	Native VLAN	
	default	0	
	IB-Mgmt	0	
	Native	0	
	VM-App-201	0	
	VM-App-202	0	
	VM-App-203	0	
QoS Policy : Network Control Policy : Pin Group : Stats Threshold Policy :	<not set=""> Domain Pools default(0/0) MAC_Pool_A(32/32) MAC_Pool_B(32/32)</not>		
Dynamic vNIC usNIC usNIC Connection Policy	C VMQ <not set=""></not>		

- 11. Click OK to create the vNIC template.
- 12. Click OK.

Create Application vNICs

For the vNIC_App_A Template, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click vNIC Templates.
- 4. Select Create vNIC Template.
- 5. Enter vNIC_App_A as the vNIC template name.
- 6. Keep Fabric A selected.
- 7. Select Primary Template for the Redundancy Type.

- 8. Leave Peer Redundancy Template as <not set>
- 9. Under Target, make sure that the VM checkbox is not selected.
- 10. Select Updating Template as the Template Type.

11. Set default as the native VLAN.

Create vNIC Template		? ×
Name : VNIC_App_A Description : Fabric ID : Fabric A Redundancy	○ Fabric B	Enable Failover
Redundancy Type : No Redundar Peer Redundancy Template : 	ncy Primary Template Second	dary Template
Target ✓ Adapter ✓ VM Warning		
If VM is selected, a port profile by the same nam If a port profile of the same name exists, and upo Template Type : O Initial Template •	e will be created. dating template is selected, it will be Updating Template	overwritten
VLANs VLAN Groups		
🏹 Advanced Filter 🔺 Export 🚔 Print		\$
Select Name		Native VLAN
✓ defau	lt	•
IB-Mg	Imt	0
Native	2	0
VAL A	nn 301	0
		OK Cancel

- 12. Under VLANs, select the checkboxes for any application or production VLANs that should be delivered to the ESXi hosts.
- **13**. For MTU, enter 9000.
- 14. In the MAC Pool list, select ${\tt MAC_Pool_A}.$
- **15.** In the Network Control Policy list, select Enable_CDP.

Create vNIC Ter	nplate		? ×
VLAINS VLAIN Groups	t 🚔 Print		Ċ
Select	Name	Native VLAN	Ŧ
	default		
	IB-Mgmt	0	
	Native	0	
✓	VM-App-201	0	
 ✓ 	VM-App-202	0	
\checkmark	VM-App-203	0	
MTU : 9 MAC Pool : M QoS Policy : Network Control Policy : Pin Group : Stats Threshold Policy : Connection Policies Dynamic vNIC • usNIC usNIC Connection Policy :	Alle Halle Code Delined		
		ОК	Cancel

- 16. Click OK to create the vNIC template.
- 17. Click OK.

For the vNIC_App_B Template, follow these steps:

- 1. In the navigation pane, select the LAN tab.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click vNIC Templates.
- 4. Select Create vNIC Template
- 5. Enter vNIC_App_B as the vNIC template name.
- 6. Select Fabric B.
- 7. Select Secondary Template for Redundancy Type.
- 8. For the Peer Redundancy Template drop-down, select vNIC_App_A.

么

With Peer Redundancy Template selected, MAC Pool will be the main configuration option left for this vNIC template.

9. Under Target, make sure the VM checkbox is not selected.

Create vNIC Ter	nplate			? ×
Name : VI Description :	NIC_App_B]]	
Fabric ID : Redundancy	Fabric A	● Fabric B	_	Enable Failover
Redundancy Type	: No Redundancy C) Primary Template (Second	dary Template	
Peer Redundancy Templat Target Adapter VM Warning	e : <not set=""> <not set=""> Domain Policies vNIC_App_A vNIC_Mgmt_A</not></not>			
If VM is selected, a port pro If a port profile of the same Template Type :	file by the same name will name exists, and updating	be created. template is selected, it will be ing Template	overwritten	
🏹 Advanced Filter 🔺 Expo	rt 🖷 Print			¢
Select	Name		Native VLAN	
	default		0	
	IB-Mgmt			
	Native		0	
	VM-Ann-20	1	0	
				OK Cancel

10. In the MAC Pool list, select ${\tt MAC_Pool_B}.$

🏹 Advanced Filter 🔺 Expor	t 🚔 Print		\$
Select	Name	Native VLAN	
	default	0	
	IB-Mgmt	0	
	Native	0	
	VM-App-201	0	
	VM-App-202	0	
	VM-App-203	0	
QoS Policy : Network Control Policy : Pin Group : Stats Threshold Policy :	<pre><not set=""> Comain Pools default(0/0) MAC_Pool_A(32/32) MAC_Pool_B(32/32)</not></pre>		
Connection Policies Dynamic vNIC () usNIC usNIC Connection Policy :	VMQ <not set=""> ▼</not>		

- 11. Click OK to create the vNIC template.
- 12. Click OK.

ð

Set Jumbo Frames in Cisco UCS Fabric

These steps are unnecessary for the Cisco UCS 6454 FIs as they default to jumbo frames but left in as reference for other UCS FI platforms.

To configure jumbo frames and enable quality of service in the Cisco UCS fabric, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select LAN > LAN Cloud > QoS System Class.
- 3. In the right pane, click the General tab.
- 4. On the Best Effort row, enter 9216 in the box under the MTU column.
- 5. Click Save Changes in the bottom of the window.

Æ	LAN Cloud 👻	LAN Cloud / Qo	S System Cla	ISS								
	✓ LAN Cloud	General E	vents FS	м								
_	▼ Fabric A											
묫	▼ Port Channels	Actions			Properties							
	Port-Channel 151 vPC-151-Nexus				Owner : Local							
=	 Uplink Eth Interfaces 											
	 VLANs 	Priority	Enabled	I CoS		Packet	Weight		Weight	мти		Multic
	 VP Optimization Sets 					Drop			(%)			Optimi
	▼ Fabric B	Platinum		5			10	*	N/A	normal	•	
	 Port Channels 		_			-		1			6	-
	 Uplink Eth Interfaces 	Gold		4		V	9	T	N/A	normal	T	
	 VLANs 	Silver		2		\checkmark	8	•	N/A	normal	•	
	 VP Optimization Sets 		_			_	_	1			1	_
	QoS System Class	Bronze		1		V	7	T	N/A	normal	T	
	 LAN Pin Groups 	Best	\checkmark	Any		V	5	•	50	9216	*	
	 Threshold Policies 	Effort	_			_	_	ć			1	
	 VLAN Groups 	Fibre Channel	7	3			5	₹,	50	fc		N/A
		4										
										Save Change:	Reset	/alues

6. Click OK

Create LAN Connectivity Policy

To configure the necessary Fibre Channel Infrastructure LAN Connectivity Policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the LAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select LAN > Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click LAN Connectivity Policies.
- 4. Select Create LAN Connectivity Policy.
- 5. Enter FC-LAN-Policy as the name of the policy.
- 6. Click the upper Add button to add a vNIC.
- 7. In the Create vNIC dialog box, enter 00-Mgmt-A as the name of the vNIC.



8. Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.

- 9. In the vNIC Template list, select vNIC_Mgmt_A.
- 10. In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

Create vNI	С		? ×
Name : 00-Mgr	mt-A		
Use vNIC Templat	e: 🗹		
Redundancy Pair :		Peer Name :	
vNIC Template :	<not set=""> 🔻</not>	Create vNIC Template	
Adapter Perform	<not set=""></not>		1
	Domain Policies		
Adapter Policy	vNIC_App_A	Create Ethernet Adapter Policy	
	vNIC_App_B		
	vNIC_Mgmt_A		
	vNIC_Mgmt_B		
		ОК	Cancel

- 11. Click OK to add this vNIC to the policy.
- 12. Click the upper Add button to add another vNIC to the policy.
- **13**. In the Create vNIC box, enter O1-Mgmt-B as the name of the vNIC.
- 14. Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.
- 15. In the vNIC Template list, select vNIC_Mgmt_B.
- 16. In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.
- 17. Click OK to add the vNIC to the policy.

Create vN	IC		? ×
Name : 01-Mg	mt-B		
Use vNIC Templat	te : 🗹		
Redundancy Pair	:	Peer Name :	
vNIC Template :	<not set=""> 🔻</not>	Create vNIC Template	
Adapter Perform	<not set=""></not>		1
	Domain Policies		
Adapter Policy	vNIC_App_A	Create Ethernet Adapter Policy	
	vNIC_App_B		
	vNIC_Mgmt_A		
	vNIC_Mgmt_B		
		_	
			OK Cancel

- 18. Click the upper Add button to add a vNIC.
- 19. In the Create vNIC dialog box, enter 02-App-A as the name of the vNIC.
- 20. Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.
- 21. In the vNIC Template list, select vNIC_App_A.
- 22. In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.
- 23. Click OK to add this vNIC to the policy.

Name - 02-40			
Name : 02-Ap	p-A		
Use vNIC Templa	ite: 🗹		
Redundancy Pair	: 🗆	Peer Name :	
vNIC Template :	<not set=""> 🔻</not>	Create vNIC Template	1
	<not set=""></not>		1
Adapter Perfor	Domain Policies		
Adapter Policy	vNIC_App_A	Create Ethernet Adapter Policy	
	vNIC_App_B		
	vNIC_Mgmt_A		
	vNIC_Mgmt_B		

- 24. Click the upper Add button to add a vNIC to the policy.
- 25. In the Create vNIC dialog box, enter $\tt 03-App-B$ as the name of the vNIC.
- 26. Select the Use vNIC Template checkbox.
- 27. In the vNIC Template list, select vNIC_App_B.
- 28. In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.

Create vNI	С		? ×
Name : 03-App	р-В		
Use vNIC Templat	e: 🗹		
Redundancy Pair :		Peer Name :	
vNIC Template :	<not set=""> 💌</not>	Create vNIC Template	1
Adaptor Dorfor	<not set=""></not>		1
Adapter Perfor		-	
Adapter Policy	vNIC_App_A	Create Ethernet Adapter Policy	
	vNIC_App_B		
	vNIC_Mgmt_A		
	vNIC_Mgmt_B		
			Cancel

29. Click OK to add this vNIC to the policy.

Create LAN Connectivit	y Policy		? ×
Name : FC-LAN-Policy			
Description :	t the conversion when it does not to the LAN		
Name	MAC Address	Native VLAN	
vNIC 03-App-B	Derived		
vNIC 02-App-A	Derived		
vNIC 01-Mgmt-B	Derived		
vNIC 00-Mgmt-A	Derived		
	🕅 Delete 🕀 Add 🙆 Modify		
Add iSCSI vNICs	Bootes () And () modily		
		ок	Cancel

- 30. Click OK to create the LAN Connectivity Policy.
- 31. Click OK.

Configure FC SAN Connectivity

These Fibre Channel configuration steps will enable the provisioning of volumes to be used as datastores by the vSphere hosts, and the creation of Cisco UCS Service Profiles that will be configured to boot from Fibre Channel LUNs.

Create VSANs

To configure the necessary virtual storage area networks (VSANs) for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the SAN tab in the navigation pane.



In this procedure, two VSANs are created.

- 2. Select SAN > Storage Cloud.
- 3. Right-click VSANs.
- 4. Select Create Storage VSAN.
- 5. Enter VSAN_A as the name of the VSAN to be used for Fabric A
- 6. Select Enabled for FC Zoning.
- 7. Select Fabric A.
- 8. Enter a unique VSAN ID and a corresponding FCoE VLAN ID. It is recommended use the same ID for both parameters and to use something other than 1.

Create Storage VSAN	? ×
Name : VSAN_A	
FC Zoning Settings	
FC Zoning : Disabled Enabled	
Do NOT enable local zoning if fabric interconnect is connected t	o an upstream FC/FCoE switch.
◯ Common/Global	ifigured Differently
You are creating a local VSAN in fabric A that maps to a VSAN ID that exists only in fabric A.	A VLAN can be used to carry FCoE traffic and can be mapped to this VSAN.
Enter the VSAN ID that maps to this VSAN.	Enter the VLAN ID that maps to this VSAN.
VSAN ID: 101	FCoE VLAN : 101
	OK Cancel

- 9. Click OK and then click OK again.
- 10. Under Storage Cloud, right-click VSANs.
- 11. Select Create Storage VSAN.
- 12. Enter ${\tt VSAN}_{\sf B}$ as the name of the VSAN to be used for Fabric B.

13. Select **Enabled** for FC Zoning.

- 14. Select Fabric B.
- 15. Enter a unique VSAN ID and a corresponding FCoE VLAN ID. It is recommended use the same ID for both parameters and to use something other than 1.

Create Storage VSAN	? ×
Name : VSAN_B	
FC Zoning : Disabled Enabled	
Do NOT enable local zoning if fabric interconnect is connected to	an upstream FC/FCoE switch.
◯ Common/Global ◯ Fabric A ④ Fabric B ◯ Both Fabrics Config	gured Differently
You are creating a local VSAN in fabric B that maps to a VSAN ID that exists only in fabric B.	A VLAN can be used to carry FCoE traffic and can be mapped to this VSAN.
Enter the VSAN ID that maps to this VSAN.	Enter the VLAN ID that maps to this VSAN.
VSAN ID: 102	FCoE VLAN : 102
	OK Cancel

16. Click OK and then click OK again.

Assign VSANs to FC Storage Ports

To assign storage VSANs to FC Storage Ports, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click SAN.
- 2. Select SAN > Storage Cloud.
- 3. Expand Fabric A and Storage FC Interfaces.
- 4. Select the first FC Interface.
- 5. For User Label, enter the storage controller name and port.

- 6. From the drop-down list select VSAN VSAN_A.
- 7. Adjust Admin Speed as appropriate for connections.

Æ	All	SAN / Storage Cloud / Fabric A / Storage	FC Inte / FC Inte	rface 1/1	
	▼ SAN	General Faults Events			
	 SAN Cloud 	A - 11	D		
뮰	✓ Storage Cloud	Actions	Properties		
	▼ Fabric A	Enable Interface	ID	: 1	Slot ID : 1
	✓ Storage FC Interfaces	Disable Interface	Fabric ID	: A	
	FC Interface 1/1		User Label	: VSP G370 CL1-A	
	FC Interface 1/2		Port Type	: Physical	Network Type : San
	 Storage FCoE Interfaces 		Transport Type	: Fc	Role : Storage
	 VSANs 		Locale	: External	Port : sys/switch-A/slot-1/sw
20	► Fabric B		VSAN	Fabric A/vsan VSAN_A 🔻	Fill Pattern : 💿 Idle 🔿 Arbff
	► FC Zone Profiles		Admin Speed(gbp	s) : 4 Gbps 8 Gbps 16gbps (32gbps
	▶ VSANs				

- 8. Click Save Changes and OK.
- 9. Repeat steps 5-8 for the second FC Interface.
- 10. Within Storage Cloud, expand Fabric B and Storage FC Interfaces.
- 11. Repeat steps 4 through 9 for the Fabric B interfaces, using VSAN_B.



Create vHBA Templates

To create the necessary virtual host bus adapter (vHBA) templates for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the SAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click vHBA Templates.
- 4. Select Create vHBA Template.
- 5. Enter vHBA Template A as the vHBA template name.
- 6. Keep Fabric A selected.
- 7. Leave Redundancy Type as No Redundancy.
- 8. Select VSAN_A.
- 9. Leave Initial Template as the Template Type.
- 10. Select WWPN_Pool_A as the WWPN Pool.

11. Click OK to create the vHBA template.

Create vHBA	Template	? ×
Name : Description : Fabric ID : Redundancy	vHBA_Template_A	
Redundancy Type	: No Redundancy O Primary Template O Secondary Template	
Select VSAN :	VSAN_A Create VSAN	
Max Data Field Size :	2048	
WWPN Pool :	WWPN_Pool_A(24/32) 🔻	
QoS Policy :	<not set=""> 🔻</not>	
Pin Group :	<not set=""></not>	
Stats Threshold Policy :	default 🔻	
	ОК Са	ncel

12. Click OK.

- 13. Right-click vHBA Templates.
- 14. Select Create vHBA Template.
- 15. Enter <code>vHBA_Template_B</code> as the <code>vHBA</code> template name.
- 16. Select Fabric B as the Fabric ID.
- 17. Leave Redundancy Type as No Redundancy.
- 18. Select VSAN_B.
- 19. Leave Initial Template as the Template Type.
- 20. Select WWPN_Pool_B as the WWPN Pool.
- 21. Click OK to create the vHBA template.

Create vHBA	Template	? ×
Name :	vHBA_Template_B	
Description :		
Fabric ID :	○ A ● B	
Redundancy		
Redundancy Type	: No Redundancy O Primary Template O Secondary Template	
Select VSAN :	VSAN_B Create VSAN	
Template Type :	● Initial Template ◯ Updating Template	
Max Data Field Size :	2048	
WWPN Pool :	WWPN_Pool_B(24/32) V	
QoS Policy :	<not set=""> 🔻</not>	
Pin Group :	<not set=""></not>	
Stats Threshold Policy :	default 🔻	
	ОК С	ancel

22. Click OK.

Create SAN Connectivity Policy

To configure the necessary Infrastructure SAN Connectivity Policy, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the SAN tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select SAN > Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click SAN Connectivity Policies.
- 4. Select Create SAN Connectivity Policy.
- 5. Enter Infra-SAN-Policy as the name of the policy.
- 6. Select the previously created WWNN_Pool for the WWNN Assignment.
- 7. Click the Add button at the bottom to add a vHBA.
- 8. In the Create vHBA dialog box, enter Fabric-A as the name of the vHBA.
- 9. Select the Use vHBA Template checkbox.

- 10. Leave Redundancy Pair unselected.
- 11. In the vHBA Template list, select vHBA_Template_A.

Create vHE	3A		? ×
Name Use vHBA Templa	: Fabric-A		
Redundancy Pair :		Peer Name ·	
Recarding Pair .			
vHBA Template :	<not set=""> 🔻</not>	Create VHBA Template	
Adapter Perform	<not set=""></not>		
Adapter Policy :	Domain Policies	Create Fibre Channel Adapter Policy	
	vHBA_Template_A		
	vHBA_Template_B		
		ОК	Cancel

- 12. In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.
- 13. Click OK.
- 14. Click Add to add a second vHBA.
- 15. In the Create vHBA dialog box, enter Fabric-B as the name of the vHBA.
- 16. Select the Use vHBA Template checkbox.
- 17. Leave Redundancy Pair unselected.
- 18. In the vHBA Template list, select vHBA_Template_B.

Create vHBA	? ×
Name : Fabric-B Use vHBA Template : 🗹	
Redundancy Pair :	Peer Name :
vHBA Template : <not set=""> 🔻</not>	Create vHBA Template
Adapter Perform <not set=""></not>	
Adapter Policy : Domain Policies	Create Fibre Channel Adapter Policy
vHBA_Template_A	
vHBA_Template_B	
	OK Cancel

- 19. In the Adapter Policy list, select VMWare.
- 20. Click OK.

Create SAN Connectiv	vity Policy	? ×
Name : Infra-SAN-Policy		
Description :		
A server is identified on a SAN by its Wo with this profile. World Wide Node Name	rld Wide Node Name (WWNN). Spe	ecify how the system should assign a WWNN to the server associated
WWNN Assignment:	WWNN_Pool(32/32)	•
Create WWNN Pool		
The WWNN will be assigned from	the selected pool.	
The available/total WWWNNs are d	isplayed after the pool name.	
•		Þ
Name	W	WPN
▶ vHBA Fabric-B	De	rived
▶ vHBA Fabric-A	De	rived
	Delete (+) Add	Modify
		OK Cancel

- 21. Click OK to create the SAN Connectivity Policy.
- 22. Click OK to confirm creation.

Create Boot Policy

The VSP G₃₇₀ target WWPN will need to be collected to provide the Cisco UCS Boot Policy.

These target WWPN can be collected directly from the VSP but running the show flogi database command from each FI will be fairly quick provided there is clear identification of the port cabling from the VSP ports to the FI ports.

Storage	Local Port	Connection	FI	FI Port
Hitachi VSP G ₃₇ 0	CL 1-A	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/1
	CL 2-B	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI A	FC 1/2
	CL 3-B	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/11

Table 10 VSP G370 to FI Port Information Carried Forward

Storage	Local Port	Connection	FI	FI Port
	CL 4-A	32Gb FC	Cisco UCS 6454 FI B	FC 1/12

Using this table, it is possible to get the expected local port (VSP) to the FI port values. With this information, the WWPN can be pulled out of the flogi to port connections on the respective FI.

Running the sh flogi database command on UCS FI A:

UCS-6454-A# co UCS-6454-A (nx-	nnect nx os)# sh	os flogi data	base	
INTERFACE	VSAN	FCID	PORT NAME	NODE NAME
fc1/1 fc1/2	101 101	0x840040 0x840060	50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:00 50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:11	50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:00 50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:11

Running the sh flogi database command on UCS FI B:

UCS-6454-B# c UCS-6454-B(nx	connect nx -os)# sh	os flogi data	base		
INTERFACE	VSAN	FCID	PORT NAME	NODE N	NAME
fc1/1 fc1/2	102 102	0x860040 0x860060	50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:21 50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:30	50:06:0e:80:1 50:06:0e:80:1	12:c9:9a:21 12:c9:9a:30

Find the appropriate VSP G₃₇₀ local ports for each fabric and record the values to be used for Primary and Secondary Boot Targets. In the example lab environment flogi output, the FI Interface (FI Port) values in the previous table for this fabric have been cross referenced, and the WWPN(Port Name) for these interfaces are recorded.

Table 11 Fabric A Boot Targets for the VSP G370

	6454 FI Interface	Example Local Port	Target Role	WWN/WWPN Example Environment (Port Name)	WWN/WWPN Customer Environment
VSP G370 Controller 1	1/1	CL 1-A	Primary/ VMFS	50:06:0e:80:12:C9:9a:00	
VSP G370 Controller 2	1/2	CL 2-B	Secondary/ VMFS	50:06:0e:80:12:C9:9a:11	

Repeat these steps for the VSP G₃₇₀ Fabric B Primary and Secondary Boot Targets:

Table 12 Fabric B Boot Targets for the VSP G370

	6454 FI Interface	Example Local Port	Target Role	WWN/WWPN Example Environment	WWN/WWPN Customer Environment
VSP G370 Controller 1	1/1	CL 3-B	Primary Boot/ VMFS	50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:21	
VSP G370 Controller 2	1/2	CL 4-A	Secondary Boot/ VMFS	50:06:0e:80:12:C9:9a:30	

To create boot policies for the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.

- 2. Select Policies > root.
- 3. Right-click Boot Policies.
- 4. Select Create Boot Policy.
- 5. Enter Boot-FC-G370-A as the name of the boot policy.

6. Optional: Enter a description for the boot policy.



- Do not select the Reboot on Boot Order Change checkbox.
- 7. Expand the Local Devices drop-down list and select Add Remote CD/DVD.
- 8. Expand the vHBAs drop-down list and select Add SAN Boot.
- 9. In the Add SAN Boot dialog box, enter Fabric-A in the vHBA field.
- 10. Confirm that Primary is selected for the Type option.

Create Boot Policy		? ×
Name : E	Boot-FC-G370-A	
Description :		
Reboot on Boot Order Change :	3	
Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name : 🗷	2	
Boot Mode :	● Legacy ◯ Uefi	
WARNINGS: The type (primary/secondary) does no The effective order of boot devices wi If Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name is If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBAs of (A) Local Devices	iot indicate a boot order presence. vithin the same is selected and t Add SAN Boot ? X is are selected if t vHBA : Fabric-A	
(+) Local Devices	Type : Primary Secondary Any	2 ¹
⊕ CIMC Mounted vMedia	Nar Not N Boot N Boot P Des	cri
(+) vNICs		
⊖ vHBAs		
Add SAN Boot		
Add SAN Boot Target	OK Cancel	
⊕ iSCSI vNICs	Delete	
(+) EFI Shell		
	ОК Сапса	

- 11. Click OK to add the SAN boot initiator.
- 12. From the vHBA drop-down list, select Add SAN Boot Target.
- 13. Leave 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.
- 14. Enter the WWPN for Controller1 (CL 1A) recorded in Table 11.
- 15. Select Primary for the SAN boot target type.

Create Boot Policy	• ×
Name : Boot-FC-G370-A Description :	
The effective order of boot devices within the same t If Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name is selected and t If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBAs are selected if t Boot Target LUN : 0	is used.
Boot Boot South and test test Image: South and test test ••• CIMC Mounted vMedia ••• Primary Osecondary ••• Primary Osecondary	V Slot N Boot N Boot P Descri
Add SAN Boot Add SAN Boot Target OK Cancel	
⊕ iSCSI vNICs	Delete
⊕ EFI Shell	
	OK Cancel

- 16. Click OK to add the SAN boot target.
- 17. From the vHBA drop-down list, select Add SAN Boot Target.
- 18. Leave 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.
- 19. Enter the WWPN for Controller2 (CL 2B) recorded in Table 11.

Create Boot Policy	?	\times
Name : Boot-FC-G3 Description : Reboot on Boot Order Change : Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name : Boot Mode : WARNINGS:	70-A Uefi	
The type (primary/secondary) does not indicate a bo The effective order of boot devices within the same If Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name is selected and If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBAs are selected if	Add SAN Boot Target (?) ×	
CIMC Mounted vMedia	Boot Target WWPN : 50:06:0E:80:12:C9:9A:11 Type : Primary Secondary N Slot N Boot P Descri 	
Add SAN Boot Add SAN Boot Target	OK Cancel	
	E more op e more down - Delete	
EFI Shell		
	OK Cancel	

- 20. Click OK to add the SAN boot target.
- 21. From the vHBA drop-down list, select Add SAN Boot.
- 22. In the Add SAN Boot dialog box, enter Fabric-B in the vHBA box.



Create Boot Policy			? ×
Name : Boot- Description : Reboot on Boot Order Change : Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name : Boot Mode : WARNINGS:	°C-G370-A acy ◯ Uef		
The type (primary/secondary) does not indic The effective order of boot devices within th If Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name is select If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBAs are sel	e same (e dand t ected if t Boot vHBA : Fabric-B	? × is used.	
⊕ CIMC Mounted vMedia	Type : Primary Secondary Any Nar	N Slot N	Boot N Boot P Descri
⊕ vNICs			
⊖ vHBAs			
Add SAN Boot Add SAN Boot Target	ОК	Cancel	
⊕ iSCSI vNICs		p v move pown Delete	
⊕ EFI Shell			
			OK Cancel

- 23. Click OK to add the SAN boot initiator.
- 24. From the vHBA drop-down list, select Add SAN Boot Target.
- 25. Leave ${\tt 0}$ as the value for Boot Target LUN.
- 26. Enter the WWPN for <code>Controller1 (CL 3B)</code> recorded in Table 12 .
- 27. Select Primary for the SAN boot target type.

Create Boot Policy	(3	X
Name : Boot-FC Description : Reboot on Boot Order Change : Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name : Boot Mode : WARNINGS: The type (primary/secondary) does not indicat	C-G370-A	
The effective order of boot devices within the If Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name is selected If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBAs are selected.	Add SAN Boot Target ? × is used.	
CIMC Mounted vMedia	Boot Doot Nager Extra 1 + Boot Target WWPN : 50:06:0E:80:12:C9:9A:21 Na Type : • Primary O Secondary	¢
⊕ vNICs	· ·	
Add SAN Boot		
⊕ iSCSI vNICs	Cancel Delete	
+ EFI Shell		
	OK Cancel	

- 28. Click OK to add the SAN boot target.
- 29. From the vHBA drop-down list, select Add SAN Boot Target.
- 30. Enter 0 as the value for Boot Target LUN.
- 31. Enter the WWPN for <code>Controller2 (CL 4A)</code> recorded in Table 12 .

Create Boot Policy	3	X
Name : Boot-F Description : Reboot on Boot Order Change : Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name : Boot Mode : Encore State Sta	FC-G370-A	
The effective order of boot devices within the fifetive order of boot devices within the lf Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name is select If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBAs are selected.	esame t ted and t lected if t Boot Target UIN - 0	
CIMC Mounted vMedia	Boot Doct Target EUN 0 + Boot Target WWPN : 50:06:0E:80:12:C9:9A:30 Nar Type : Primary @ Secondary N Slot N.,, Boot N.,, Boot P.,, Descrit	¢.
⊕ vNICs		
O VHBAs		
Add SAN Boot Target	OK Cancel	
iSCSI vNICs EFI Shell		
	OK Cancel	

- $_{\ensuremath{\texttt{32}}}$ Click OK to add the SAN boot target.
- 33. Expand CIMC Mounted vMedia and select Add CIMC Mounted CD/DVD.

Create Boot Policy	?	\times
Name :	Boot-FC-G370-A	
Description :		
Reboot on Boot Order Change :		
Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name :		
Boot Mode :	● Legacy ◯ Uefi	
WARNINGS: The type (primary/secondary) does The effective order of boot devices If Enforce vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI Name If it is not selected, the vNICs/vHBA/ Could occal Devices	s not indicate a boot order presence. s within the same device class (LAN/Storage/iSCSI) is determined by PCIe bus scan order. e is selected and the vNIC/vHBA/iSCSI does not exist, a config error will be reported. As are selected if they exist, otherwise the vNIC/vHBA with the lowest PCIe bus scan order is used.	
(+) LOCAI Devices	Boot Order	5
CIMC Mounted vMedia	Name Order VNIC/v Type LUN N WWN Slot N Boot N Boot P Descri.	<u> </u>
Add CIMC Mounted CD/DVD	Remote CD/DVD 1	
Add CIMC Mounted HDD	w San 2	
	SAN Primary Fabric Primary	
(+) vNICs	SAN Secondary Fabric-B Secon	
⊖ vHBAs	CIMC Mounted C 3	
Add SAN Boot	🕇 Move Up 🔸 Move Down 💼 Delete	
Add SAN Boot Target		
(+) iSCSI vNICs		
+ EFI Shell		
	OK Cancel	

34. Click OK, then click OK again to create the boot policy.

In this design, the boot targets specified aligns with the number of ports used from the VSP. If more VSP target ports are used to support VMFS bandwidth above what is available from the configured boot targets, a Storage Connection Policy will need to be created and used within a vHBA Initiator Group as specified in this Configuration Example: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/support/docs/servers-unified-computing/ucs-infrastructure-ucs-manager-software/116082-config-ucs-das-00.html

Create Service Profile Template

In this procedure, one service profile template for Infrastructure ESXi hosts is created for fabric A boot.

To create the service profile template, follow these steps:

- 1. In Cisco UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Service Profile Templates > root.
- 3. Right-click root.
- 4. Select Create Service Profile Template to open the Create Service Profile Template wizard.

- 5. Enter VSI-FC-G370-A as the name of the service profile template. This service profile template is configured to boot from VSP G370 controller 1 on fabric A.
- 6. Select the "Updating Template" option.
- 7. Under UUID, select UUID_Pool as the UUID pool.

		Create Service Profile Template	?	\times
0	Identify Service Profile Template	You must enter a name for the service profile template and specify the template type. You can also specify how a UUID will be assigned to template and enter a description.	his	
	Storage Provisioning	Name : VSI-FC-G370-A		
	Networking	The template will be created in the following organization. Its name must be unique within this organization. Where : org-root		
	SAN Connectivity	The template will be created in the following organization. Its name must be unique within this organization. Type : Initial Template Updating Template Specify how the UUID will be assigned to the server associated with the service generated by this template		
	Zoning	UUID		_
6	vNIC/vHBA Placement	UUID Assignment: UUID_Pool(32/32)		
	vMedia Policy	The UUID will be assigned from the selected pool. The available/total UUIDs are displayed after the pool name.		
B	Server Boot Order	Optionally enter a description for the profile. The description can contain information about when and where the service profile should be used	d.	
9	Maintenance Policy			
10	Server Assignment			
•	Operational Policies			
		< Prov Next > Finish Can	cel	

Configure Storage Provisioning

To configure the storage provisioning, follow these steps:

1. If you have servers with no physical disks, click the Local Disk Configuration Policy tab and select the SAN-Boot Local Storage Policy. Otherwise, select the default Local Storage Policy.



Configure Networking Options

To configure the network options, follow these steps:

- 1. Keep the default setting for Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy.
- 2. Select the "Use Connectivity Policy" option to configure the LAN connectivity.
- 3. Select FC-LAN-Policy from the LAN Connectivity Policy drop-down list.

		Create Service Profile Template	? ×
	Identify Service Profile	Optionally specify LAN configuration information.	
	Template	Dynamic vNIC Connection Policy: Select a Policy to use (no Dynamic vNIC Policy by default) -	
2	Storage Provisioning		
3	Networking		
•	SAN Connectivity	How would you like to configure LAN connectivity? Simple Expert No vNICs Use Connectivity Policy	
5	Zoning	LAN Connectivity Policy : <pre>create LAN Connectivity Policy</pre>	
6	vNIC/vHBA Placement	Initiator Name Assignn	
	vMedia Policy	Create IQN Suffix Pool	
8	Server Boot Order	WARNING: The selected pool does not contain any available entities. You can select it, but it is recommended that you add entities to it.	
9	Maintenance Policy		
10	Server Assignment		
0	Operational Policies		
		< Prev Next > Finish G	ancel

Configure Storage Options

To configure the storage options, follow these steps:

- 1. Select the Use Connectivity Policy option for the "How would you like to configure SAN connectivity?" field.
- 2. Pick the Infra-SAN-Policy option from the SAN Connectivity Policy drop-down list.

		Create Service Profile Template	? ×
0	Identify Service Profile Template	Optionally specify disk policies and SAN configuration information.	
2	Storage Provisioning	How would you like to configure SAN connectivity? Simple Expert No vHBAT Ise Connectivity Policy SAN Connectivity Policy : <a href="https://www.createsan.com/createsan.</th> <th></th>	
0	SAN Connectivity	Contiset> Domain Policies Infra-SAN-Policy	
6 0	Zoning vNIC/vHBA Placement		
0	vMedia Policy		
8	Server Boot Order		
9	Maintenance Policy		
10	Server Assignment		
U	Uperational Policies	< Prev Next > Finish Ca	ncel

Configure Zoning Options

1. Leave Zoning configuration unspecified unless VSP ports exceed the number of boot targets created and a Storage Connection Policy has been created, click Next.

Configure vNIC/HBA Placement

- 1. In the "Select Placement" list, leave the placement policy as "Let System Perform Placement."
- 2. Click Next.

Configure vMedia Policy

- 1. Do not select a vMedia Policy.
- 2. Click Next.

Configure Server Boot Order

1. Select Boot-FC-G370-A for Boot Policy.

Finish Cancel
Fi

2. Click Next to continue to the next section.

Configure Maintenance Policy

1. Change the Maintenance Policy to default.

		Create Service Profile Template			
	Identify Service Profile Template	Specify how disruptive changes such as reboots, network interruptions, and firmware upgrades should be applied to the server associated with this service profile.			
	Storage Provisioning	Maintenance Policy			
	Networking	Select a maintenance policy to include with this service profile or create a new maintenance policy that will be accessible to all service profiles. Maintenance Policy: Select (no policy used by default) Create Maintenance Policy			
	SAN Connectivity	Select (no policy used by default)			
	Zoning	default			
0	vNIC/vHBA Placement	No maintenance policy is selected by default. The service profile will immediately reboot when disruptive changes are applied.			
	vMedia Policy				
8	Server Boot Order				
9	Maintenance Policy				
10	Server Assignment				
0	Operational Policies				
		< Prev Next > Finish Cance	el		

Configure Server Assignment

To configure server assignment, follow these steps:

- 1. In the Pool Assignment list, select Infra_Pool.
- 2. Optional: Select a Server Pool Qualification policy.
- 3. Select Up as the power state to be applied when the profile is associated with the server.
- 4. Optional: Select "UCS-B200M5" for the Server Pool Qualification.



Firmware Management at the bottom of the page can be left alone as it will use default from the Host Firmware list.

		Create Service Drofile Template			
		Create Service Profile Template			
1	Identify Service Profile	Optionally specify a server pool for this service profile template.			
	rempiate	You can select a server pool you want to	associate with this service profile template.		
2	Storage Provisioning	Pool Assignment: Infra_Pool 🔻	Create Server Pool		
3	Networking		Select the power state to be applied when this profile is associated with the server		
•	SAN Connectivity		• Up Down		
5	Zoning				
0	vNIC/vHBA Placement	The service profile template will be ass If desired, you can specify an additiona the list.	cciated with one of the servers in the selected pool. server pool policy qualification that the selected server must meet. To do so, select the qualification f	rom	
9	vMedia Policy	Server Pool Qualification : <not set:<="" th=""><th>•</th><th></th></not>	•		
		Restrict Migration : <not set<="" th=""><th>t></th><th></th></not>	t>		
8	Server Boot Order	Firmware Managem	Policies Iler, Adapter)		
9	Maintenance Policy	UCS-B	200M5		
		all-cha	SIS		
10	Server Assignment				
11	Operational Policies				
			(Prov. Next > Finish Come	al	
			Cance Cance		

Configure Operational Policies

To configure the operational policies, follow these steps:

- 1. In the BIOS Policy list, select VM-Host.
- 2. Expand Power Control Policy Configuration and select No-Power-Cap in the Power Control Policy list.

		Create Service	e Profile Templat	e	? ×
0	Identify Service Profile Template	Optionally specify information that affects how the system operates.			
2	Storage Provisioning	BIOS Configuration If you want to override the default BIOS settings, select a BIOS policy that will be associated with this service profile			
3	Networking	BIOS Policy: VM-Host T			
0	SAN Connectivity				×
6	Zoning	External IPMI Management Configuration			
6	vNIC/vHBA Placement	Management IP Address			
	vMedia Policy	Monitoring Configuration (Thresholds)			
8	Server Boot Order	Power Control Policy Configuration			
9	Maintenance Policy	Power control policy dete Power Control Policy :	<pre>rmines power allocation for a </pre>	server in a given power group. Create Power Control Policy	
10	Server Assignment	Scrub Policy	<not set=""></not>		
0	Operational Policies	⊕ KVM Managem	No-Power-Cap		
		Graphics Card Policy			
		< Prev Finish Cancel			

- 3. Click Finish to create the service profile template.
- 4. Click OK in the confirmation message.

Create vMedia Service Profile Template

If the optional vMedia Policy is being used, a clone of the service profile template created above will be made to reference this vMedia Policy in these steps. The clone of the service profile template will have the vMedia Policy configured for it, and service profiles created from it, will be unbound and re-associated to the original service profile template after ESXi installation.

To create a clone of the VSI-FC-G₃₇₀-A service profile template, and associate the vMedia Policy to it, follow these steps:

- 1. Connect to Cisco UCS Manager, click Servers.
- 2. Select Service Profile Templates > root > Service Template VSI-FC-G370-A.
- 3. Right-click Service Template VM-Host-FC-A and select Create a Clone.
- 4. Name the clone VSI-FC-G370-A-vM and click OK.
- 5. Select Service Template VSI-FC-G370-A-vM.
- 6. Select the vMedia Policy tab.
- 7. Under Actions, select Modify vMedia Policy.

- 8. From the drop-down list, select the ESXi-6.7U1-HTTP vMedia Policy.
- 9. Click OK then click OK again to complete modifying the Service Profile Template.

Create Service Profiles

0

To create service profiles from the service profile template, follow these steps:

- 1. Connect to the UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect UCS Manager, click the Servers tab in the navigation pane.
- 2. Select Service Profile Templates > root > Service Template VSI-FC-G₃₇₀-A-vM.
- 3. Right-click VSI-FC-G370-A-vM and select Create Service Profiles from Template.
- 4. Enter VSI-G₃₇₀-o as the service profile prefix.
- 5. Leave 1 as "Name Suffix Starting Number."
- 6. Leave 2 as the "Number of Instances."
- 7. Click OK to create the service profiles.

Create Service Profiles From Template ? ×

Naming Prefix : VSI-G370-0	
Name Suffix Starting Number : 1	
Number of Instances : 2	
	OK Cancel

8. Click OK in the confirmation message to provision two Service Profiles.

When VMware ESXi 6.7 U1 has been installed on the hosts, the host Service Profiles can be unbound from the VM-Host-FC-A-vM and rebound to the VM-Host-FC-A Service Profile Template to remove the vMedia mapping from the host, to prevent issues at boot time if the HTTP source for the ESXi ISO is somehow not available.
Configuring Host Connectivity and Presentation of Storage on Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform

Configuration steps in this section assume that parity groups and LDEVs have been configured on the Hitachi VSP as part of the solution build/configuration by a partner or Hitachi professional services. If parity groups have not been configured on the Hitachi VSP, please reference the <u>Hitachi Storage Virtualization Operating System documentation for creating parity</u> groups before continuing with this section.

Ensure that you have planned which parity groups and LDEVs to use for specific storage requirements. Your configuration may vary based on the types of drives ordered with your VSP and with its configured parity groups.

Create a Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning Pool for UCS Server Boot LDEVs

To begin the provisioning process to create the Boot LDEVs that will be used as boot LUNs, follow these steps:

1. Log into Hitachi Storage Navigator.



- 2. From the left Explorer pane select the **Storage Systems** tab.
- 3. Expand the storage system being configured. Highlight the **Pools** element in the navigation tree and click **Create Pools** to instantiate the Create Pools dialog box.

Hitachi Device Manager Storage N File Actions Reports Set	lavigator tings Maintenance Utility Viev	w Help
Explorer Storage Systems	Pools <u>VSP G370(S/N:451610)</u> > Pools	
* 🇊 VSP G370(S/N:451610)	Edit Tiering Policies	
僱 Reports) 隋 Components	Pool Capacity	Used/Total
* 💏 Parity Groups		Estimated Configurable
Cogical Devices	V-VOL Capacity	Allocated/Total
* M Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets		Estimated Configurable
M External Storage	Licensed Capacity (Used/License	ed)
Replication	Number of Pools	
	Pools	
	Create Pools Create LDEVs	Expand Pool More Actions

- 4. Configure the following items in the left pane of the Create Pools dialog box:
 - a. Pool Type: Dynamic Provisioning
 - b. System Type: Open [Only an option when configuring the G1500]
 - c. Multi-Tier Pool: Disable
 - d. Data Direct Mapping: Disable
 - e. Pool Volume Selection: Manual
- 5. Select the **Drive Type/RPM** and **RAID Level** desired for the UCS server boot LDEV backing pool using the drop-down lists and click **Select Pool VOLs** to instantiate the Select Pool VOLs dialog box.

Pool Type:	Dynamic Provisioning ▼	want to create, an	Se	elected Pools	_	_	_	Onti	
Multi-Tier Pool: Data Direct Mapping:	Enable Isable Active Flash Enable O Enable			Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level	Capacity	Pool Type	Drive Type/RPM	E
Pool Name:	RPM: (1(2D+2D) Select Pool VOLs Total Selected Pool Volumes: Total Selected Capacity: (Max. 32 Characters)	Add]>			N	o Dat	â		
Vortions									
			<						

- 6. Within the left pane of the Select Pool VOLs dialog box, select the checkbox next to the LDEVs to be used for the UCS server boot LDEV dynamic provisioning pool.
- 7. Click **Add** to move the selected LDEV to the right pane of the dialog, then click **OK** to return to the Create Pools dialog box.

5	vailable Pool V	olumes						S	elected Pool \	Volumes				
2	Filter ON OFF	Select All Pa	iges	Options 🗸	€€1	/1 ≫ ⋺		Se	lect All Pages					Opt
1	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Capacity	Parity Group ID	RAID Level	Drive Type/RPM			LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Capacity	Parity Group ID	RAID Level	Drive Type/
1	00:00:00	R1_LDEV	3061.76 GB	1-1	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
]	00:00:02	R1_LDEV	3061.76 GB	1-2	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
	00:00:07	R1_Perf	3071.93 GB	1-3	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
	80:00:00	R1_Perf	3071.93 GB	1-4	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
	00:00:09	R1_Perf	3071.93 GB	1-5	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
	00:00:0A	R1_Perf	3071.93 GB	1-6	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
	00:00:0B	R1_Perf	3071.93 GB	1-7	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
	00:00:0C	R1_Perf	3071.93 GB	1-8	1(2D+2D)	SSD/-								
							Add 🕨							
											No D	ata		
							4.0				NO D	ata		
							4 Kentove							
								-						
										_				
										_				
								\vdash						
						>		10						
					Select	ed: 1 of 8							Select	ed: 0

8. You should now see values for **Total Selected Pool Volumes** and **Total Selected Capacity** shown under the **Select Pool VOLs** button. Give the dynamic provisioning pool a descriptive **Pool Name**, then click **Add** to add the pool to be created to the **Selected Pools** pane in the dialog.

Create Pools								7	
1.Create Pools > 2.Confirm									
This wizard lets you create poo Click Finish to confirm the crea	is for Dynamic Provisioning, and Thin Image. Enter the information for the pool you tion, or click Next if you want to create LDEVs (virtual volumes) from the pools.	want to create, and	d then	click Add.					
Pool Type:	Dynamic Provisioning]	Se	lected Pools	_	_	-	Ont	
Multi-Tier Pool:	C Enable O Disable			Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level	Capacity	Pool Type	Drive Type/RPM	Enc
Data Direct Mapping:	Enable Oisable								
Pool Volume Selection:	O Auto Manual								
Drive Type/ RAID Level:	RPM: SSD/- (1(2D+2D) Select Pool VOLs Total Selected Pool Volumes: 1 Total Selected Pool Volumes: 1 Total Selected Pool Volumes: 1								
Pool Name:	UCS_Boot_Pool (Max. 32 Characters)	Add 🕨			N	o Dat	a		
¥ Ωntions			<	Detail Remov				Selected: 0	of 0
		Next Task O	ption	: Continue to Crea	te LDEVs	Back Ne	ext 🕨 🕞	nish Cance	. ?

- 9. Click Finish.
- 10. Review the configuration for the pool to be created in the Create Pools confirmation dialog box and ensure the **Go to tasks window for status** checkbox is checked, then click **Apply**.
- 11. The tasks status window will appear, wait for the task status to show complete before moving onto the next step.

er a i	name for the task.	Confirm the set	tings in the list a	and click Apply	r to add task in Ta	asks queue for execu	ition.			
k Na	me: 190 (Ma	215-CreatePool ax. 32 Character	s)							
С	reate Pools	_	_	_	_					
							User-Defined Thre	shold (%)		
	Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level	Capacity	Pool Type	Drive Type/RPM	Encryption	Warning	Depletion	Suspend TI pairs when depletion threshold is exceeded	to Blocked Pool VOL
\bigcirc	UCS_Boot_Po	1(2D+2D)	3057.63 GB	DP	SSD/-	Disabled	70	80	Yes	No
	Detail									Total:

Create a Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning Pool for UCS Server VMFS Volume LDEVs

Follow the steps in section Create a Hitachi Dynamic Provisioning Pool for UCS Server Boot LDEVs to create the dynamic provisioning pool for the UCS Server VMFS volume LDEVs, selecting the Drive Type/RPM, RAID Level, and number of Pool VOLs desired for the pool backing the VMFS volumes in the solution.

Create Host Groups for Cisco UCS Server vHBAs on Each Fabric

An individual host group must be created on each physical fibre channel port on the VSP for each vHBA attached to its respective fabric. The number of host groups created will depend on the number of paths per LDEV. Ensure you have documented the specific ports on each fabric being used on the VSP, their WWNs, and each vHBA WWPN before you proceed with this section and ensure that all initiators for the UCS Service Profiles you will be creating host groups for are showing as logged into the respective VSP fibre channel ports by following the steps below.

To create Host Groups for UCS server vHBAs on each fabric, follow these steps:

- 1. From the Explorer pane within Hitachi Storage Navigator, select the **Storage Systems** tab and expand the storage system being configured.
- 2. Highlight the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** element in the navigation tree and select the **Login WWNs/iSCSI Names** tab.

Hitachi Device Manager Storage N File Actions Reports Set	lavigator Lings Maintenance Utility View Help
Explorer	Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets
Storage Systems	VSP G370(S/N:451610) > Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets
▼ 前 VSP G370(S/N:451610)	Number of Ports
11 Tasks	
Carl Reports	Host Groups / iSCSI Targets Hosts Ports Login WWNs/iSCSI Names CHAP Users
Components	Add to Hart Courses Delate Losis WAWAR Delate Losis 20001 Names Allows
' 💏 Parity Groups	Add to Host Groups Delete Login WWWs Delete Login ISCSI Names More Actions
🜈 Logical Devices	A Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Column Settings
▶ 🍓 Pools	Port ID Type HBA WWN / iSCSI Name 1 A Host Name Host Group Name
Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets	CL1-A Fibre 🏦 2000002585540A00

- 3. Review the list of WWNs and associated ports. You should be able to see each vHBA assigned to each fabric associated with each port on the VSP that it is zoned to.
- 4. Click the column names to sort the information to make this task easier or utilize the **Filter** feature to limit the number of records displayed. If any vHBA WWNs do not show in the list, go back and double check the zoning configuration on the FI.
- 5. With the **Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** element in the navigation tree still selected, click the **Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** tab.

_									
	Hitachi Device Manager Storage	Naviga	ator						
	File Actions Reports Se	ttings	Maintenance	Utility Vi	ew Help				
	Explorer	Ро	rts/Host Gro	ups/iSCS	I Targets				
	Storage Systems	vsi	P G370(S/N:4516	<u>10)</u> > Ports	/Host Groups/iSCS	I Targets			
	VSP G370(S/N:451610)	1	Number of Ports						
	🙀 Tasks			_			7		
	🛍 Reports	Н	ost Groups /	iSCSI Tai	gets Hosts	Ports	Login WWNs	/iSCSI Names	CHAP Us
	🔭 Components		0						_
	👫 Parity Groups		Create Host Gro	ups Crea	ite iSCSI Targets	Add Ll	IN Paths More Ac	tions	
	Cogical Devices		≮Filter ON	OFF Se	ect All Pages Colu	mn Setti	ngs		
	t 🎼 Pools		Death ID	Turn	Host Group Nam	e/	iSCSI Target	Hash Mada	Death Comm
	Ports/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets	- L	Port ID	Type	iSCSI Target Alia	14	Name	HOST MODE	Port Secul
1									

6. Click Create Host Groups to instantiate the Create Host Groups dialog box.

- 7. Host groups will be created separately for fabric A and fabric B vHBAs. Start with the fabric A host group for an individual UCS Service Profile and modify the following within the Create Host Groups dialog box:
 - a. **Host Group Name**: Provide a descriptive name for the host and ensure there is an identifier for the fabric you are configuring (i.e., VSI-G₃₇₀₋₁_Fab_A)
 - b. Host Mode: Select 21 [VMware Extension] from the drop-down list.
 - c. **Host Mode Options**: For each of the following Host Mode Options, find the Mode Number in the pane, select the checkbox, and click the **Enable** button:
 - i. 54 (VAAI) Support Option for the EXTENDED COPY command
 - ii. 63 (VAAI) Support option for vStorage APIs based on T10 standards
 - iii. 114 The automatic asynchronous reclamation on ESXi6.5 or later

eate Host Groups > 2.Confirm								
a visard late you conto hast accurs. To visus all hast made actions, click Onlines, Click Sinish to co	ofirm the granting of	aliak	Next if you u	ant to add LUN on the				
is wizard lets you create nost groups. To view all nost mode options, click Options. Click Pinish to co en you change the Host Mode, all of the Host Mode Options will be set to default.	ntirm the creation, or	CIICK	Next If you w	ant to add LUN paths.				
	~	Se	lected Ho	st Groups	_	_	_	_
Host Group Name: VSI-G370-1_FAB_A (Max, 64 characters)	1	Sele	ect All Pages					
Resource Group Name (ID):			Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of	T10
Host Moder							Hosts	-
21 [VMWare Extension]								
Host Mode Options								
Host Mode Options								
No. Option Description								
✓ 114 The automatic asynchronous reclamation on ESXi6.5 or later								
÷								
Foshla Disabla Salartadi 3 of 33								
Chable Disable Selected: 3 01 33								
Hosts:	Add F				lo Dat	a		
Available Hosts								
Ref ID HRA WWA								
CLISA 2000002585540.001								
CLI-A 2000002585540A01								
< >								
Add New Host Selected: 0 of 18								
Ports:								
Available Ports	0							
☆ Filter ON OFF Select All Pages Options ▼ IE 1 / 1 > Э								
Port ID Security T10 PI Mode		< =	216					
			Detail Re	move			Selected: 0	of 0

8. Write down the WWN information from Table 11 and Error! Reference source not found. in the previous Create Device Aliases section:

Table 13 Fabric A Targets and Initiators

	Name	WWN/WWPN Example Environment (Port Name)	WWN/WWPN Customer Environment
Target	G370-CL1-A	50:06:0e:80:12:c9:9a:00	
Target	G370-CL2-B	50:06:0e:80:12:C9:9a:11	
Initiator	VSI-G370-01	20:00:00:25:B5:54:0A:00	
Initiator	VSI-G370-02	20:00:00:25:B5:54:0A:01	

Table 14 Fabric B Targets and Initiators

		WWN/WWPN Example Environment (Port Name)	WWN/WWPN Customer Environment
Target	G370-CL3-B	50:06:0e:80:12:C9:9a:21	
Target	G370-CL4-A	50:06:0e:80:12:C9:9a:30	
Initiator	VSI-G370-01	20:00:00:25:B5:54:0B:00	

		WWN/WWPN Example Environment (Port Name)	WWN/WWPN Customer Environment
Initiator	VSI-G370-02	20:00:00:25:B5:54:0B:01	

- 9. Scroll down in the Create Host Groups dialog.
- 10. Within the Available Hosts section, click Filter.
- 11. Create an Attribute/Value filter of:
 - HBA WWN
 - Using "contains" as a qualifier
 - Using the last four characters of the Fabric A initiator for the host

This will be without ":" characters from the above table, and assuming that the last four characters is sufficient to produce a unique matching value. If necessary, use a larger identifying character string.

Create Host Groups								F 🗆 X
1.Create Host Groups > 2.Confirm								
This wizard lets you create host groups	. To view all host mode options, click Options, Click Finish to confirm	the creation, or click N	lext if you w	ant to add LUN paths.				
When you change the Host Mode, all of	the Host Mode Options will be set to default.							
Host Group Name:	VSI-G370-1 Fab A	Sel	ected Ho	st Groups		_	_	
	(Max. 64 characters)	Selec	t All Pages					
Resource Group Name (ID):	Any 🗸		Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	T10 P
Host Mode:	21 [VMware Extension]							
A Hest Made Options								
Host Mode Options								
Mode Option Descript	ion A							
No.	Mahar							
Attribute:	value:							
1 HBA WWN ▼ C	elect Item							
3 Select Item	elect Item		, +					
					No Dat	a		
Match All V conditions a		t Clear	Apply					
Port ID HBA WWN	Host Name Host Group Name							
CL1-A 20000025B55	40A01							
CL1-A 20000025B55	40A00 🗸							
Add New Hert	Salacted: 0 of 18							
Pada New Host	Selected, 0 0i 10							
Available Ports								
Filter ON OFF Select A	ll Pages Options ♥ K € 1 / 1 → →							
Port ID Security	T10 PI Mode	< 🗆						>
CL1-A Enabled	Disabled	D	etail Re	emove			Selected: 0	of O
		N	0-1					
		Next Task	Option : Co	nunue to Add LUN Patr	Back	Next Fi	nish Canc	el ?

- 12. Click Apply.
- 13. Click Filter again to hide the filter rules dialog box.
- 14. Select the checkbox for the first port shown in the filtered list within the **Available Hosts** section.
- 15. Within the Available Ports section, check the checkboxes for all ports zoned to the host within Fabric A only.

eate Host Groups > 2	2.Confirm									
is wizard lets you create h nen you change the Host I	ost groups. To view all host mode opt Mode, all of the Host Mode Options wil	ions, click Options. Click Finish to I be set to default.	confirm the creation,	or click N	lext if you v	want to add LUN paths.	_	_	_	
	····	· •)	^	Sel	ected Ho	ost Groups	_	_	_	-
Host Mode:	21 [VMware Extension]	▼]		Selec	t All Pages					
A Host Mode Options				v ;	Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	т1
Host Mode Opti	ons			V (CL1-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Dis
Mode Optio	on Description	^		V (CL2-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Dis
NO.										
114 The s	automatic asynchronous reclamation c	Il ESAISTO Flater								
<		>								
Enable Disabl	e	Selected: 3 of 33								
Hosts:										-
Available Hosts										
© Flitter ON OFF	Select All Pages Options V		Add 🕨							
Port ID HB	A WWN Host Name	e Host Group Name Ne		/						
✓ CL1-A 200	00002585540A00	No								
CL2-B 200	00002585540A00									
Add New Host		Selected: 1 of 2								
Ports:										
Available Ports										
☆Filter ON OFF	Select All Pages Options 🗸 🤘	€ 1 / 1 → →								
Port ID Sec	urity 1 🔻 T10 PI Mode	^								
CL3-B Ena	abled Disabled	0								
CL4-A Ena	abled Disabled									
CL2-B Ena	bled Disabled	~		۰.						
		Selected: 2 of 16	U,	De	etail R	emove		_	Selected: 2	of 2
							6			

In the picture above, the CL1-A port entry was also selected within the Available Ports section.

16. Click Add, then click Finish.

s

17. Review the host group configuration for the Fabric A host groups for the UCS Service Profile being configured.

Create	Host Gro	ups		_					TOX
1.Create	Host Group	s > 2.Confirm							
Enter	a name for t	he task. Confirm the setting	gs in the list and clic	k Apply to add ta	sk in Tasks queue	for execution.			
Task i	lame:	190218-CreateHostGr	oups						
		(Max. 32 Characters)							
	Create Ho	st Groups					_	1	
	Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	T10 PI Mode	Resource Group Name (ID)	Virtual Storage Machine	
() CL1-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Disabled	meta_resource (0)	VSP G370 / 451610	
C) CL2-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Disabled	meta_resource (0)	VSP G370 / 451610	
-									
_									
_									
	Detail								Total: 2
							V Got	n tasks window for status 🖉 Back 🛛 New N	aku Cansal 2
								App	ny cancer ?

- 18. Click Apply.
- 19. Repeat steps 1-18 to create the host groups for all remaining initiator WWN from the Fabric A and Fabric B tables above, using a descriptive name for the host on Fabric A/B, the vHBA WWN on Fabric A/B for the UCS Service Profile, and the associated Fabric A/B ports on the Hitachi VSP.

Create Boot LDEVs for Each UCS Service Profile and Add LDEV Paths

Individual boot LDEVs must be created for each UCS Service Profile for the ESXi hypervisor to be installed onto. Prior to beginning these steps, ensure you have identified the fibre channel ports on the Hitachi VSP that will be used for presentation of the boot LDEVs to the UCS servers. Please note that a maximum of four paths can be used within the UCS Service Profile (two on each fabric) as boot targets.

To create boot LDEVs for each UCS service profile and add LDEV paths, follow these steps:

- 1. From the left Explorer pane within Hitachi Storage Navigator, select the **Storage Systems** tab and expand the storage system being configured.
- 2. Expand the **Pools** element in the navigation tree and highlight the UCS Boot pool previously created for use as the backing storage for the UCS boot LDEVs.
- 3. Select the Virtual Volumes tab and click Create LDEVs to instantiate the Create LDEVs dialog.

morer	UCS Boot Pool(0)		
torage Systems	<u>VSP G370(S/N:451610)</u> > <u>Pools</u> > UCS_Boot_Pool(0)	
1 🗊 VSP G370(S/N:451610)	Status	Normal	Tier Management
👔 Tasks	Pool Name (ID)	UCS_Boot_Pool(0)	Cycle Time
Reports	Pool VOL with System Area (Name)	00:00:00(R1_LDEV_000)	Monitoring Period
* 🎢 Components	Pool Type	DP	Monitoring Mode
Marity Groups	RAID Level	1(2D+2D)	Monitoring Status
	Drive Type/RPM	SSD/-	Recent Monitor Data
	Encryption	Disabled	Pool Management Task
	Cache Mode	-	Relocation Result
UCS_BOOT_P60I(0)			Relocation Speed
UCS_VMFS(1)	Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Blocked Pool VOL		No
' orts/Host Groups/iSCSI Targets	Protect V-VOLs when I/O fails to Full Pool		No
* Marchael Storage	Number of Pool VOLs		1 (Max Allowed: 1024)
' 🙀 Replication	Number of V-VOLs		0 (Max Allowed: 32768)
	Number of Root VOLs		0
	Pool Capacity (Used/Total)		0.00 MB / 2.98 TB [0 %]
	Saving Effect		- (0.00 MB)
	Software Saving	Compression	- (-)
		Deduplication	- (-)
	FMD Compression		- (-)
	V-VOL Capacity (Used/Total)		0.00 MB / 0.00 MB [- %]
	Pool Volumes Virtual Volumes TI Ro	ot Volumes	

- 4. Modify the following within the Create LDEVs dialog:
 - **LDEV Capacity**: Enter the capacity desired for the UCS Service Profile boot LDEV. Note that ESXi requires a minimum of 5.2GB for a boot LDEV as documented by VMware.
 - Number of LDEVs: 1
 - LDEV Name: Provide a descriptive name and numeric identifier for the boot LDEV. For ease of identification, it
 is recommended that the server name or other identifier specific to the service profile being configured be
 entered in the Prefix field.

rovisioning Type:	Dynamic Provisioning	î	Selected LDE	Ws		_	Options
ata Direct Mapping:	Enable 💽 Disable					Data Direct M	lapping
pacity Saving:	Disabled 🗸		LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Pool Name(ID)	LDEV ID	Parity Gro
ti-Tier Pool:	Enable 💿 Disable						ID
	Active Flash						
Selection:							
Drive Type/RPM:	SSD/-	ר 📗					
ATD Level							
CAID Level:	1(20+20)						
	Select Pool						
Selected Pool Na	me(ID): UCS Boot Pool(0)						
				No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca	pacity: 2.98 TB	Add 🕨		No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca	pacity: 2.98 TB	Add 🕨]	No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca	pacity: 2.98 TB	Add		No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca V Capacity:	pacity: 2.98 TB Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 (0.05-262144.00) GB	Add		No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca / Capacity: ber of LDEVs:	pacity: 2.98 TB Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 (0.05-262144.00) 1	Add		No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca	pacity: 2.98 TB Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 (0.05-262144.00) 1 (1-32760)			No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca	pacity: 2.98 TB Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 (0.05-262144.00) 1 (1-32760)			No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca / Capacity: ber of LDEVs: / Name:	pacity: 2.98 TB Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 10 0.05-262144.00) 1 (1-32760) Brafiv Initial Number VSL-63270- 01			No	Data		
Selected Pool Ca pacity: of LDEVs: me:	pacity: 2.98 TB Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 0 10 0.05-262144.00) 1 0 (1-32760) 01 VSI-G370- 01 /Max. 23 character total labeled and any 9-dialit number			No	Data		

5. Click Add and verify that the boot LDEV is listed in the right-hand Selected LDEVs pane, then click Next.

The **Select LDEVs** screen shows the selected LDEVs to which the paths will be added.

6. Ensure the newly created boot LDEV is the only LDEV in the **Selected LDEVs** pane, then click **Next**.

eate LDEVs													T D X
Create LDEVs > 2.Sel	ect LDEVs	 3.Select Host 	Groups / iSCSI Targ	ets > 4.View/	Change LUN P	aths > 5.Confi	rm						
This wizard lets you assig	gn LDEVs to ha	st groups or iSC	SI targets, and then	map the host g	roups or iSCS	I targets to LUN p	baths.						
Select LDEVs from the A	vailable LDEVs	list, and then cli	ck Add. Click Next to	assign LDEVs t	o host groups	or iSCSI targets.							
LDEVs:													
Available LDEVs	_	_	_	_			Se	elected LDE	/s	_	_	_	_
★Filter ON OFF	Select All Pa	iges	Options 🔻 🔟	€ 1 / 1			Sele	ect All Pages					Options 🔻
LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level	Capacity			LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	Capacity	Provisioni Type
00:00:02	R1_LDEV	1-2	-	1(2D+2D)	3061.76 G			00:00:01	VSI-G37	-	UCS_Boot_Po	10.00 GB	DP
00:00:08	R1_Perf	1-4	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
00:00:09	R1_Perf	1-5	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
A0:00:00	R1_Perf	1-6	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
00:00:0B	R1_Perf	1-7	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
00:00:0C	R1_Perf	1-8	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
						Add 🕨							
						Remove							
<				Selected:	> 0 of 6		< =					Selected:	> 0 of 1
		_											
										🛛 🛛 Bacl	k Next 🗁	Finish C	Cancel ?

- 7. The **Select Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** screen shows all of the host groups that can be assigned to the boot LDEV as a path.
- 8. Click Filter, then create an Attribute/Value filter:
 - Host Group Name
 - Using "contains" as a qualifier
 - <value which contains text unique to UCS server profile>

Cre	ate LDEVs	;											1	F 🗆 🗙
1.Cr	eate LDEVs	> 2.Select LDEVs > 3.	Select Host Groups	/ iSCSI Targets Value:	> 4.View/Chan	ge LUN I	Paths > 5.Confi	rm						
	Host Gro	un Name	contains	VSI-C	3370-1					lect iSCSI targets	from the Available iS	CSI Targets list,		
	Select It	em 🗸	Select Item											
3	Select It	em 🗸	Select Item	•					+					
	Markall (All						Durat C D	1						
	Match All	Conditions above.			1 / 1		Reset C	lear		iroups	_	_	_	
	<pre>↓Filter OK</pre>	Select All Page		tions 🗸 🔤 🗠	1 / 1	Asym		Sel	lect All Pages					
	Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Hosts	Acces			Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Hosts	Acces
	CL1-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	-								_
	CL3-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	•								
	CL4-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	•								
	CL2-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	-								
							Add 🕨							
							Remove							
							-				No Data	a		
				-		>		< 0						>
	Detail				Selected: 0	of 4			Detail				Selected: 0	of O
				_								_		_
											Back	Next 🕨 🛛 Fi	nish Cance	el ?

9. Click Apply.

- 10. Click Filter again to hide the filter rules dialog box.
- 11. Select the checkboxes for the ports being used as boot LDEV paths in your configuration. Depending on the pathing design used, you may have fewer than four paths for the boot LDEV, but there should be a minimum of one path per fabric used.

Create LDEV	5						-					1	
1.Create LDEVs	> 2.Select LDEVs > 3	Select Host Groups	/ iSCSI Targets	> 4.View/Char	ige LUN I	Paths > 5.Conf	ìrm						
Select host gro	oups from the Available Hos	st Groups list, and th	nen click Add. If y	ou want to add iS	CSI targ	ets, select iSCSI i	from S	election Obje	ct, select iSCSI targets fi	rom the Available iS	CSI Targets list,		
and then click	Add. Click Next to map the	e host groups or iSC	SI Targets to LUN	I paths.	-								
Selection Obje	ct: 💿 Fibre	iscsi											
Host Groups:													
Available	Host Groups						s	elected Ho	st Groups	_	_	_	
Reliter 0	OFF Select All Page	es Op	tions 🔻 🛛 (Itra) 🤄	1 / 1			Se	lect All Pages				1	
Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Hosts	Acces			Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Asym
CL1-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1									
CL3-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled										
CL4-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1									
CL2-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	-								
							۱.						
						Add 🕨							
						Remove			-	lo Data	9		
							_				-1		
							_						
							_						
<			<u> </u>		>		< 1		1		-		>
Detail				Selected: 4	of 4			Detail				Selected: 0	of O
										Back	Next F	nish Cance	2 ?

12. Click the Add to populate the Selected Host Groups pane with the selected host groups, then click Next.

13. The **View/Change LUN Paths** screen shows the LDEV you are adding paths to and the associated host LUN ID that will be presented to the host on a per path basis.

Create LDEVs										TOX
1.Create LDEVs > 2.Sele	ect LDEVs > 3.9	Select Host Groups /	iSCSI Targets	> 4.View/Chang	ge LUN Paths	> 5.Confirm				
The LUN IDs are automa and select LDEVs you wa	itically set, but yo ant to change and	u can change a LUN I then click Change L	by clicking Cha .UN IDs. Click Fi	inge LUN IDs. You inish to confirm th	must first selec e LUN paths.	t the check box	for the host group (in the t	able subheading) you w	ant to change,	
LUNs:										
Added LUNs										
Filter ON OFF	Select All Page	15							Options 🖵 Ѥ 🥌	1 / 1 🌛 利
	Danihu Canun			Desuisianing			LUN ID(4 Sets of Pat	hs)		
LDEV Name	ID	Pool Name (ID)	Capacity	Туре	Attribute	T10 PI	G370-1_Fab_A	CL3-B/VSI- G370-1_Fab_B	CL4-A/VSI- G370-1_Fab_B	CL2-B/VSI- G370-1_Fab_A
VSI-G370-01	-	UCS_Boot_Po	10.00 GB	DP	-	Disabled	0	0	0	0
<										>
Change LDEV Setting	gs Change LU	N IDs								Selected: 0 of 1
									and a local ball	Esist Coursel (2)
								(B	ick wext P	rinish Cancel ?

14. Use the scrollbar at the bottom of this screen to review the LUN ID assigned and ensure that all LUN IDs are set to zero, then click **Finish**.

	190218	CreateLDEVs										
	(Max. 3	2 Characters)										
Selected	l LDEVs		_	_				_	_	_	_	-
	1051		Provisioning			710.07	Resource Grou	q	Virtual Storage Mach	ine		
LDEV ID	LDEV	Name Capacity	Туре	MP UNIT ID	Encryption	110 PI	Name (ID)		Model / Serial Numb	er		Att
00.00.01	VSI-G	37 10.00	B DP	Auto	Disabled	Disable	meta resource	-(0)	VSP G370 / 451610			
00.00.01	101-0	37 10.00	5 DF	A860	Disabled	Disable	meta_resource	=(0)	135 33707 451010			
<					-						T	otal:
Added L	UNs				-						Τα	otal:
Added L	UNS LUN ID	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Host Group Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	Capacity	Provisi Type	oning Attribut	a ALUA Mode	Asymmetric Access States	otal:
Added L Port ID CL1-A	UNS LUN ID 0	LDEV ID 00:00:01	LDEV Name VSI-G370-01	Host Group Name VSI-G370-1	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID) UCS_Boot_Po	Capacity 10.00 GB	Provisi Type DP	oning Attribut	ALUA Mode	Asymmetric Access States Active/Optimi	otal:
Added L Port ID CL1-A CL3-B	UNS LUN ID 0 0	LDEV ID 00:00:01 00:00:01	LDEV Name VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01	Host Group Name VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1	Parity Group ID -	Pool Name (ID) UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po	Capacity 10.00 G8 10.00 G8	Provisi Type DP DP	oning Attribut	ALUA Mode Disabled Disabled	Asymmetric Access States Active/Optimi Active/Optimi	otal:
Added L Port ID CL1-A CL3-B CL4-A	UNS LUN ID 0 0 0	LDEV ID 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01	LDEV Name VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01	Host Group Name VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1	Parity Group ID 	Pool Name (ID) UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po	Capacity 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB	Provision Type DP DP DP	oning Attribut - - -	ALUA Mode Disabled Disabled Disabled	Asymmetric Access States Active/Optimi Active/Optimi	otal:
Added L Port ID CL1-A CL3-B CL4-A CL2-B	UN5 LUN ID 0 0 0 0	LDEV ID 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01	LDEV Name VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01	Host Group Name VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1	Parity Group ID 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 -	Pool Name (ID) UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po	Capacity 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB	Provisi- Type DP DP DP DP DP	oning Attribut - - - -	ALUA Mode Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled	Asymmetric Access States Active/Optimi Active/Optimi Active/Optimi	otal:
Added L Port ID CL1-A CL3-B CL4-A CL2-B	UN5 LUN ID 0 0 0 0	LDEV ID 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01	LDEV Name VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01	Host Group Name VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1	Parity Group ID 2 • • • •	Pool Name (ID) UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po	Capacity 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB	Provisi Type DP DP DP DP	oning Attribut - - - - -	ALUA Mode Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled	Asymmetric Access States Active/Optimi Active/Optimi Active/Optimi	otal:
Added L Port ID CL1-A CL3-B CL4-A CL2-B	UNS LUN ID 0 0 0 0	LDEV ID 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01 00:00:01	LDEV Name VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01 VSI-G370-01	Host Group Name VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1 VSI-G370-1	Parity Group ID 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 - 2 -	Pool Name (ID) UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po UCS_Boot_Po	Capacity 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB 10.00 GB	Provisi Type DP DP DP DP	oning Attribut - - - -	ALUA Mode Disabled Disabled Disabled Disabled	Asymmetric Access States Active/Optimi Active/Optimi Active/Optimi	otal:

- 15. Review the LDEV details and LUN ID configuration of the boot LDEV being created, then click **Apply** to create the LDEV and add paths to the UCS Service Profile.
- 16. Repeat steps 1-15 to create the boot LDEVs and to assign paths for all other UCS Service Profiles, using a unique LDEV name and associated Host Group Name associated to each UCS Service Profile.

Create Shared VMFS LDEVs and Add LDEV Paths

VMFS LDEVs need to be created for shared VMFS volumes used for virtual machine storage across multiple ESXi servers which share resources within a vSphere cluster. Prior to beginning these steps, ensure you have identified the fibre channel ports on the Hitachi VSP that will be used for presentation of the VMFS LDEVs to the UCS servers. Depending on the pathing design you are using, additional or fewer paths may be configured as compared to the steps below.

A minimum of two paths should be used for shared VMFS LDEVs (one path per fabric).

To create shared VMFS LDEVs and add LDEV paths, follow these steps:

- 1. From the left Explorer pane within Hitachi Storage Navigator, select the **Storage Systems** tab and expand the storage system being configured.
- 2. Expand the **Pools** element in the navigation tree and highlight the pool previously created for use as the backing storage for VMFS volumes, select the **Virtual Volumes** tab and click **Create LDEVs** to instantiate the Create LDEVs dialog.
- 3. Modify the following within the Create LDEVs dialog:

- **LDEV Capacity**: Enter the capacity desired for the VMFS LDEV.
- Number of LDEVs: 1
- LDEV Name: Provide a descriptive name and numeric identifier for the VMFS LDEV. For ease of identification, it
 is recommended that the cluster name or other identifier specific to the VMFS volume being configured be
 entered in the Prefix field.
- 4. Click Add and verify that the VMFS LDEV is listed in the right-hand Selected LDEVs pane, then click Next.

Content Selected LDEVs The visualized bar you create and provision LDER starts the information for: LDER you want to create, and then click Add. Click Options to expand the LDEV satings. Click Finish to creation, or click Next IF you want to add LUN paths for the LDEVs. Provisioning Type: Demanic Provisioning Data Direct Mapping: Enable Data Direct Mapping: Enable Data Direct Mapping: Enable Direct Mapping: Estect and point point Selected Direct Mapping: Estect and point point Belet Pool Estect and point point Selected Direct Mapping: Estect All Pages Direct Tapping: Estect All Pages Direct Mapping: Estect All Pages Direct Mapping Este	Create LDEVs							₹ □×
The vice field let you create and providen LDEV setter the information for LDEV providening for the LDEV setting. Click finish to confirm the creation, or click field fire would LUR paths for the LDEV. Providening Type: Data Direct Mapping: Data Direct Mapping	1.Create LDEVs > 2.Confirm							
Provisioning Type: Dynamic Provisioning Image: Comparison of the comparison o	This wizard lets you create and pr Click Finish to confirm the creation	rovision LDEVs enter the information for LDEVs you want to create, an n, or click Next if you want to add LUN paths for the LDEVs.	d then click Add. Click C	ptions to expand the L	DEV settings.			
Data Direct Mapping: Enable Capacity Saving: Disable Capacity Saving: Disable Active Flash Pool Selection: Drive Type/RPM: SSD/- RAID Level: i (20+20) Selected Pool Capacity: 2:99 TB LDEV Sapacity: Capacity: Capacity: ::0 Selected Pool Capacity: ::0 Capacity: ::0 Capacity: ::0 Selected Pool Capacity: ::0 Capacity: ::0 Capacity: ::0 Selected Pool Capacity: ::0 Capac	Provisioning Type:	Dynamic Provisioning	î	Selected LDEVs		_	_	Options 🗸
Capacity Saving: Disable Multi-Titer Pool: Enable Active Flash Pool Selection: Drive Type/RPM: SED/- I.(20+2D) Selected Pool Name(ID): Selected Pool Nam	Data Direct Mapping:	Enable 💿 Disable					Data Direct Mapp	bing
Multi-Tier Pool: Active Flash Pool Selection: Drive Type/RPM: Status Select Pool Select Pool Select Pool Name(ID): UCS_VMFS(1) Selected Pool Capacity: 2.99 TB Add > Add > <td>Capacity Saving:</td> <td>Disabled</td> <td></td> <td>LDEV ID</td> <td>LDEV Name</td> <td>Pool Name(ID)</td> <td>LDEV ID</td> <td>Parity Group ID</td>	Capacity Saving:	Disabled		LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Pool Name(ID)	LDEV ID	Parity Group ID
Pool Selection: Drive Type/RPM: SBD/- RAID Lavel: 1(2D+2D) Selected Pool Name(ID): UCS_VMF8(1) Selected Pool Capacity: 2.99 TB Add Add Add Add No Data IDEV Capacity: Cap	Multi-Tier Pool:	Enable Disable Active Flash						
Drive Type/RPM: SBD/- RAID Level: 1(20+2D) Selected Pool Name(ID): UCS_VMPS(1) Selected Pool Capacity: 2.99 TB LDEV Capacity: Capacity: Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) IDEV Capacity: 10 IDEV Capacity: 10 IDEV Selected Pool Capacity: 10 IDEV Capacity: 10 IDEV Capacity: 10 IDEV Name: Perfix IDEV Name: Perfix IDEV Name: VST-VMFS- IDEV Name: Initial Number VST-VMFS- 04 (Max: 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)	Pool Selection:							
RAID Level: 1(2D+2D) Select Pool S	Drive Type/RPM:	SSD/-						
Selected Pool Selected P	RAID Level:	(1(2D+2D)						
Selected Pool Name(ID): UCS_VMFS(1) Selected Pool Capacity: 2.99 TB LDEV Capacity: Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 TB<		Select Pool						
LDEV Capacity: Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 (U01-256.00) Number of LDEVs: 1 (1-16317) LDEV Name: Prefix Initial Number VS1-VMFS- 01 (Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)	Selected Pool Name(Selected Pool Capaci	(ID): UCS_VMFS(1) ity: 2.99 TB	Add 🕨		No	Data		
LDEV Capacity: Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary) 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10 10						Data		
Number of LDEVs: 1 1 1 LDEV Name: Prefix VST-VMFS- 01 (Max: 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank) 0	LDEV Capacity:	Capacity Compatibility Mode (Offset boundary)						
Number of LDEVs: 1 (1-16317) (1-16317) LDEV Name: Prefix VSI-VMFS- 01 (Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank) 0		(0.01-256.00)						
LDEV Name: Prefix Initial Number VSI-VMFS- 01 (Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)	Number of LDEVs:	1 (1-16317)						
LDEV Name: Prefix Initial Number VSI-VMFS- 01 (Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)								
(Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number, or blank)	LDEV Name:	Prefix Initial Number VSI-VMFS- 01						
M Detinos		(Max. 32 characters total including max. 9-digit number,						
M Options		or orenky						
Change LDEV Settings Remove Selected: 0 of 0	V Options		• •	Change LDEV Setti	ngs Remove		Selecte	d: 0 of 0
Next Task Option : Continue to Add LUN Paths (Back Next) Finish Cancel ?			Next Ta	sk Option : Continue to	Add LUN Paths	∉ Back Next	Finish	Cancel ?

5. The **Select LDEVs** screen shows the selected LDEVs to which the paths will be added.

Crea	te LDEVs													Ŧロ×
1.Crea	te LDEVs > 2.Se	elect LDEVs	 3.Select Host 	Groups / iSCSI Targ	ets > 4.View/	Change LUN F	aths > 5.Confi	rm						
This	wizard lets you assi	ign LDEVs to ho	ost groups or iSC	SI targets, and then	map the host g	roups or iSCS	I targets to LUN	aths.						
Sele	ct LDEVs from the A	Available LDEVs	list, and then cli	ck Add. Click Next to	o assign LDEVs t	o host groups	or iSCSI targets							
LDE	Vs:													
A	vailable LDEVs	_	_	_	_			S	elected LDEV	's	_	_	_	
(^	Filter ON OFF	Select All Pa	iges	Options 👻 Ѥ	€ 1 / 1	> >		Se	elect All Pages					Options 👻
	LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	RAID Level	Capacity			LDEV ID	LDEV Name	Parity Group ID	Pool Name (ID)	Capacity	Provisionin Type
	00:00:01	VSI-G37	-	UCS_Boot_Po	1(2D+2D)	10.00 G			00:00:04	VSI-VMF	-	UCS_VMFS(1)	10240.00	DP
	00:00:02	R1_LDEV	1-2	-	1(2D+2D)	3061.76 G								
	00:00:03	VSI-G37	-	UCS_Boot_Po	1(2D+2D)	10.00 GI								
	00:00:08	R1_Perf	1-4	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
	00:00:09	R1_Perf	1-5	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
	A0:00:00	R1_Perf	1-6	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
	00:00:0B	R1_Perf	1-7	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
	00:00:0C	R1_Perf	1-8	-	1(2D+2D)	3071.93 G								
							Add 🕨							
							Remove							
< 0						>		< 1						>
					Selected:	0 of 8							Selected:	0 of 1
											4.0		First-k	0
											U Bac	Next D	- misn	ancer ?

- 6. Ensure the newly created VMFS LDEV is the only LDEV in the **Selected LDEVs** pane, then click **Next**.
- 7. The **Select Host Groups/iSCSI Targets** screen shows all of the host groups that can be assigned to the VMFS LDEV as a path.
- 8. Click Filter, then create multiple Attribute/Value:
 - Host Group Name
 - Using "contains" as a qualifier
 - <value which contains text unique to UCS server profiles to use the VMFS volume>

Crea	ite LDEVs												1	
1.Cre	ate LDEVs 🔉	2.Select LDEVs > 3	Select Host Groups	/ iSCSI Targets	> 4.View/Chan	ge LUN P	aths > 5.Confir	rm		_				
	Attribute:			value:	_					lect iSCSI targets	from the Available is	CSI Tarnets list.		
1	Host Grou	up Name 🛛 🔻	contains	VSI-0	3370									
2	Select Ite	im 🔍	Select Item											
3	Select Ite	im 🔻	Select Item	▼					<u>-+</u>					
,	latch All	 conditions above. 					Reset Cl	ear	Apply	TOUDS				
	Filter	OFF Select All Page	es Opt	tions 🔻 🔀 🧲	1 / 1	→)		Sel	ect All Pages	Toups				
	Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Asym Acces			Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Asym
	CL1-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL1-A	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL3-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL3-B	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL4-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL4-A	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL2-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
	CL2-B	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active	Add							
-							4.0							
							Remove				No Dat	a		
												T.		
_														
				<u> </u>				1.0						
	Detail				Selected: 0	of 8			Detail				Selected: 0	of 0
											4 Back	Next	nish Cance	. 2
											Dack		Cance	

9. Click Apply.

- 10. Click Filter again to hide the filter rules dialog box.
- 11. Select the checkboxes for the ports being used as VMFS LDEV paths in your configuration.

Attended books of the second based based Groups A cook ingreds > 4.44ev/Change UMP Refs > 5.confine Attended based Groups fame in the based Based Group and to add BCSI targets select BCSI from Selection CSJ targets from the Available IRCSI Targets late. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets to UMP parts. Attended Based Targets from the Available IRCSI Targets IRCSI from Selection Selectio	eate LDEVs												1	
	reate LDEVs >	2.Select LDEVs > 3.	Select Host Groups	/ iSCSI Targets	> 4.View/Chai	nge LUN	Paths > 5.Confir	m						
	elect host groups nd then click Add	s from the Available Host I. Click Next to map the	t Groups list, and th host groups or iSC	nen click Add. If ye SI Targets to LUN	ou want to add is paths.	CSI targ	ets, select iSCSI fr	om Se	election Objec	t, select iSCSI targets f	rom the Available iS	CSI Targets list,		
Selected Host Scroups Available Host Coroups Options w fell 1 1 2 30 4 1 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2 2	election Object:	💿 Fibre 🤇	iscsi											
Barter On OFF Select All Pages Options V (C 1 / 1) (V) Port ID Host Group Name Host Mode Port Security Number of Association (V) Cl.1.A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 (VMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl.3.A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 (VMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl.3.A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 (VMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl.4.A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 (VMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl.4.A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 (VMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl.4.A VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 (VMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl.2.B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 (VMvare	lost Groups: Available Ho	ost Groups					l	6	alacted He	ct Crowne				
Port ID Host Group Name Host Mode Port Security Number of Hosts Acres Cl1A VSI-G370-1_fab 21 (MMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl3-8 VSI-G370-2_fab 21 (MMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl4-4 VSI-G370-2_fab 21 (MMvare Enabled 1 Active Cl2-8 VSI-G370-2_fab 21 (Mmvare Enabled 1 Active Cl2-1 V	☆Filter ON (OFF Select All Page	s Opt	tions 👻 Ѥ 🗲	1 / 1	→ Э)		Sal	act All Pages	scoroups				_
CL1-A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CL1-A VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CL3-B VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CL4-A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CL2-B VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CL2-B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CL2-B VSI-G370-1_Fab	Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Asym			Port ID	Host Group Name	Host Mode	Port Security	Number of Hosts	Asyn
CultA VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CultA VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CultA VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CultA VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active CultA VSI-G370-1_Fab	CL1-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
13-8 VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active 1 0.3-8 VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active 1 0.3-8 VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active 1 0.3-8 VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active 1 0.3-8 VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active 1 0.3-8 VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active 1 0.3-8 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 1 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9 0.3-9<	CL1-A	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
C13-B VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active C14-A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active C12-B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active Add C12-B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active Add Image: Control of Control o	СLЗ-В	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
Q Q-A VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active Q Q-A Inc	CL3-B	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
Q Q4-A VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active Q Q2-B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active Add Q Q2-B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Active Add Image: Constraint of the second of the sec	CL4-A	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
C12-8 VSI-G370-1_Fab 21 [VMvare Enabled 1 Activ Add Image: Control of the	CL4-A	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
CL2-B VSI-G370-2_Fab 21 [VMware Enabled 1 Active Add Image: Imag	CL2-B	VSI-G370-1_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active								
Image: Image	CL2-B	VSI-G370-2_Fab	21 [VMware	Enabled	1	Active	Add 🕨							
Image: Selected: 8 of 8							A Remove							
Detail Selected: 8 of 8							- Remove				No Dati	a		
Image:														
Image: Selected: 8 of 8														
Image: Selected: 8 of 8														
Image: Selected: 8 of 8														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Cancel														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Cancel														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Selected: 0 of 0														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Selected: 0 of 0														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Selected: 0 of 0														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Selected: 0 of 0														
Detail Selected: 8 of 8 Detail Selected: 0 of 0	<	1	1	_		>		< 0		1	1	_		>
(Back Next) Finish Cancel	Detail				Selected: 8	of 8			Detail				Selected: 0	of O
											d Back	Next Fi	inish Cance	⊧ ?

Depending on the pathing design used, you may have additional or fewer than four paths for the VMFS LDEV, but there should be a minimum of one path per fabric used.

12. Click Add to populate the Selected Host Groups pane with the selected host groups, then click Next.

Ő.

- 13. The **View/Change LUN Paths** screen shows the LDEV you are adding paths to and the associated host LUN ID that will be presented to the host on a per path basis.
- 14. Use the scrollbar at the bottom of this screen to review the LUN ID assigned and ensure that all LUN IDs are set to a consistent value other than zero for all paths.

create LDEVs > 2	.Select LDEVs									
		> 3.Select Host	Groups / iSCSI Targets	> 4.View/Change LU	N Paths > 5.Confirm					
he LUN IDs are aut	tomatically se	t, but you can char	nge a LUN by clicking Cha	ange LUN IDs. You must	t first select the check b	ox for the host group (ir	n the table subheadi	ng) you want to cha	ange,	
IINe:	o want to tha	inge and chen click	Change Long IDSI CICK I		· paulo.					
Added LUNs	_	_		_	_	_	_	_	_	_
★Filter ON OF	FF Select	All Pages						Optic	ons 🔻 🕅 🗧 1	/1 ⇒ अ
Desuisianian			LUN ID(8 Sets of Path	hs)			1			
Type	Attribute	T10 PI	CL1-A/VSI- G370-1_Fab_A	CL1-A/VSI- G370-2_Fab_A	CL3-B/VSI- G370-1_Fab_B	CL3-B/VSI- G370-2_Fab_B	CL4-A/VSI- G370-	CL4-A/VSI- G370-	G370-	CL2-B/VSI- G370-
DP	-	Disabled	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
< Change LDEV Se	ettings Ch	ange LUN IDs							s	elected: 1 of 1
								Back	Next Finish	Cancel ?

If other LDEVs have been assigned to one host but not others, you will need to modify the Host LUN ID assignment to the next Host LUN ID that is consecutive across all hosts/paths.

- 15. Ensure you use the scrollbar at the bottom of the dialog to double-check that all Host LUN IDs are set consistently across all paths.
- 16. To do this, select the checkbox for all ports/paths listed, select the checkbox for the LDEV ID, then click **Change LUN IDs**.
- 17. The **Change LUN IDs** dialog will appear; enter the next Host LUN ID available across all paths, then click **Finish**.
- 18. Review the LDEV details and LUN ID configuration of the VMFS LDEV being created.

Ô

6

(Max. 32 Characters) Selected LDEVs LDEV ID LDEV Name Capacity Provisioning Type MP Unit ID Encryption T10 PI Resource Group Name (ID) Virtual Storage Machine 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto DISA DISA DISA 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto DISA DISA DISA 00:00:04	Attr
Selected LDEVS LDEV Name Capacity Provisioning Type MP Unit ID Encryption T10 PI Resource Group Name (D) Virtual Storage Machine 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:01:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:01:01:02 DI DI DI DI DI DI DI DI 00:01:02:02 DI DI DI DI DI DI DI DI 00:02:02 DI DI DI DI	Attr
LDEV ID LDEV Name Capacity Provisioning Type MP Unit ID Encryption Ti 0 PI Resource Group Name (ID) Virtual storage Machine 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 00:00:04 VSI-VMF Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion Inclusion	Attr
LDEV ID LDEV Name Capacity Type MP Unit ID Encryption T10 PI Name (ID) Model / Serial Number 00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disabled Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610	Attr
00:00:04 VSI-VMF 10240.00 DP Auto Disable Disable meta_resource(0) VSP G370 / 451610 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	
Image: Second state Image: Second state<	
Image: Second	
Image: second	
	Total:
Added LUNs	
Port ID LUN ID LDEV ID LDEV Name Host Group Name ID Pool Name (ID) Capacity Provisioning Type Attribute ALUA Mode Asymmetry	etric States
CLI-A 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-6370-1 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/C	ptimi
CL1-A 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-G370-2 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/C	ptimi
CL3-B 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-G370-1 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/C	ptimi
CL3-B 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-G370-2 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/G	ptimi
CL4-A 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-0370-1 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/	ptimi
CL4-A 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-G370-2 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/C	ptimi
CL2-B 1 00:00:04 VSI-VMFS-01 VSI-G370-1 UCS_VMFS(1) 10240.00 DP - Disabled Active/o	ptimi

If the output is long enough, use the scrollbar of the **Added LUNs** window to ensure the **LUN ID** column contains the same LUN ID for each port listed.

- 19. Click **Apply** to create the LDEV and add paths to the UCS Service Profiles which will share this LDEV as a VMFS volume.
- 20. Repeat steps 1-18 to create additional shared VMFS LDEVs and to assign paths for all UCS Service Profiles which will share access to the VMFS LDEVs used for VMFS volumes.

ESXi Installation

This section explains how to install VMware ESXi 6.7 U1 in the environment.

Several methods exist for installing ESXi in a VMware environment. These procedures focus on how to use the built-in keyboard, video, mouse (KVM) console and virtual media features in Cisco UCS Manager to map remote installation media to individual servers and connect to their boot logical unit numbers (LUNs).

Download Cisco Custom Image for ESXi 6.7 U1

The VMware Cisco Custom Image is required during the installation by manual access to the UCS KVM vMedia, or through a vMedia Policy covered in a previous subsection. If the Cisco Custom Image was not downloaded during the vMedia Policy setup, download it by following these steps:

- 1. To download the image, click this link: <u>VMware vSphere Hypervisor Cisco Custom Image (ESXi) 6.7 U1</u>.
- 2. You will need a user id and password on vmware.com to download this software.
- 3. Download the .iso file.

Log into Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect

The IP KVM enables the administrator to begin the installation of the operating system (OS) through remote media. It is necessary to log in to the UCS environment to run the IP KVM.

To log into the Cisco UCS environment, follow these steps:

- 1. Open a web browser to https:// <<var_ucs_mgmt_vip>>
- 2. Select the Launch UCS Manager Section in the HTML section to pull up the UCSM HTML5 GUI.
- 3. Enter admin for the Username, and provide the password used during setup.
- 4. Click Servers -> Service Profiles and select the first host provisioned, which should be named VSI-FC-G370-1.
- 5. Click Reset to ensure that the boot LUN is properly recognized by the UCS Service Profile.
- 6. Click the **KVM Console** option within **Actions** and accept the KVM server certificate in the new window or browser tab that is spawned for the KVM session.
- 7. Click the link within the new window or browser tab to load the KVM client application.

Set Up VMware ESXi Installation

Skip this step if you are using vMedia policies. ISO file will already be connected to KVM.

To prepare the server for the OS installation, follow these steps on each ESXi host:

- 1. In the KVM window, click Virtual Media icon 💾 in the upper right of the screen.
- 2. Click Activate Virtual Devices

- 3. Click Virtual Media again and select Map CD/DVD.
- 4. Browse to the ESXi installer ISO image file and click Open.
- 5. Click Map Device.
- 6. Click the KVM tab to monitor the server boot.
- 7. Boot the server by selecting Boot Server and clicking OK, then click OK again.

Install ESXi

To install VMware ESXi to the FC bootable LUN of the hosts, follow these steps on each host:

- 1. On reboot, the machine detects the presence of the ESXi installation media. Select the ESXi installer from the boot menu that is displayed.
- 2. After the installer is finished loading, press Enter to continue with the installation.
- 3. Read and accept the end-user license agreement (EULA). Press F11 to accept and continue.
- 4. Select the Boot LUN (10.00 GiB) that was previously set up as the installation disk for ESXi and press Enter to continue with the installation.
- 5. Select the appropriate keyboard layout and press Enter.
- 6. Enter and confirm the root password and press Enter.
- 7. The installer issues a warning that the selected disk will be repartitioned. Press F11 to continue with the installation.
- 8. After the installation is complete, if using locally mapped Virtual Media, click the Virtual Media tab and clear the checkmark next to the ESXi installation media. Click Yes.

The ESXi installation image must be unmapped to make sure that the server reboots into ESXi and not into the installer. If using a vMedia Policy, this will be unnecessary as the vMedia will appear after the installed OS.

9. From the KVM window, press Enter to reboot the server.

Set Up Management Networking for ESXi Hosts

Adding a management network for each VMware host is necessary for managing the host. To add a management network for the VMware hosts, follow these steps on each ESXi host:

- 1. After the server has finished rebooting, press F2 to customize the system.
- 2. Log in as root, enter the corresponding password, and press Enter to log in.
- 3. (Optional)Select Troubleshooting Options and press Enter.
- 4. (Optional)Press Enter for Enable ESXi Shell.
- 5. (Optional)Scroll to Enable SSH and press Enter.

- 6. (Optional)Press Esc to return to the main menu.
- 7. Select the **Configure Management Network** option and press Enter.
- 8. Select **Network Adapters** option leave vmnico selected, arrow down to vmnic1 and press space to select vmnic1 as well and press Enter.
- 9. Select the VLAN (Optional) option and press Enter.
- 10. Enter the <<var ib mgmt vlan id>> and press Enter.
- 11. From the Configure Management Network menu, select IPv4 Configuration and press Enter.
- 12. Select the Set Static IP Address and Network Configuration option by using the space bar.
- 13. Enter <<var vm host infra 01 ip>> for the IPv4 Address for managing the first ESXi host.
- 14. Enter <<var ib mgmt vlan netmask length>> for the Subnet Mask for the first ESXi host.
- 15. Enter <<var ib gateway ip>> for the Default Gateway for the first ESXi host.
- 16. Press Enter to accept the changes to the IPv4 configuration.
- 17. Select the **DNS Configuration** option and press Enter.

Since the IP address is assigned manually, the DNS information must also be entered manually.

- 18. Enter the IP address of <<var nameserver ip>> for the Primary DNS Server.
- 19. Optional: Enter the IP address of the Secondary DNS Server.
- 20. Enter the fully qualified domain name (FQDN) for the first ESXi host.
- 21. Press Enter to accept the changes to the DNS configuration.
- 22. Select the IPv6 Configuration option and press Enter.
- 23. Using the spacebar, select Disable IPv6 (restart required) and press Enter.
- 24. Press Esc to exit the Configure Management Network submenu.
- 25. Press Y to confirm the changes and return to the main menu.
- 26. The ESXi host reboots. After reboot, press F2 and log back in as root.
- 27. Select Test Management Network to verify that the management network is set up correctly and press Enter.
- 28. Press Enter to run the test.
- 29. Press Enter to exit the window, and press Esc to log out of the VMware console.
- 30. Repeat steps 1-29 for additional hosts provisioned, using appropriate values.

Log into VMware ESXi Hosts by Using VMware Host Client

To log into the essi-x (x is server number 1-8) ESXi host by using the VMware Host Client, follow these steps:

- 1. Open a web browser on the management workstation and navigate to the esxi-x management IP address. Respond to any security prompts.
- 2. Enter root for the user name.
- 3. Enter the root password.
- 4. Click Login to connect.
- 5. Repeat steps 1-4 to log into all the ESXi hosts in a separate browser tabs or windows.

The first host will need to go through the initial configuration using the VMware Host Client if a vCenter Appliance is being installed to the VSI cluster. Subsequent hosts can be configured directly to the vCenter Server after it is installed to the first ESXi host, or all hosts can be configured directly within the vCenter if a pre-existing server is used that is outside of the deployed converged infrastructure.

Set Up VMkernel Ports and Virtual Switch

To set up the VMkernel ports and the virtual switches on all the ESXi hosts, follow these steps:

- 1. From the Host Client, select **Networking** within the Navigator window.
- 2. In the center pane, select the Port groups tab.
- 3. Right-click the VM Network port group and select the Remove option.
- 4. Right-click the *Management Network* and select Edit Settings.
- 5. Expand NIC teaming and select vmnic1 within the Failover order section.
- 6. Click the Mark standby option.
- 7. Click Save.
- 8. Click on the **Add port group** option.
- 9. Name the port group *IB-Mgmt*.
- 10. Set the VLAN ID to <<IB-Mgmt VLAN ID>>.
- 11. Click Add.
- 12. Right-click the *IB-Mgmt* port group and select the Edit Settings option.
- 13. Expand NIC teaming and select **Yes** within the Override failover order section.
- 14. Select vmnic1 within the Failover order section.
- 15. Click on the Mark standby option.

- 16. Click Save.
- 17. Select the Virtual switches tab.
- 18. Right-click vSwitcho and select Edit settings.
- 19. Change the MTU to 9000.
- 20. Expand NIC teaming and highlight vmnic1. Select Mark active.
- 21. Click Save.
- 22. Select the VMkernel NICs tab in the center pane.
- 23. Select Add VMkernel NIC.
- 24. Enter vMotion within the New port group section.
- 25. Set the VLAN ID to <<vMotion VLAN ID>>
- 26. Change the MTU to 9000.
- 27. Click the Static option within IPv4 settings and expand the section.
- 28. Enter the Address and Subnet mask to be used for the ESXi vMotion IP.
- 29. Change the TCP/IP stack to vMotion stack.
- 30. Click Create.

6

Optionally, with 40GE vNICs, you can create two additional vMotion VMkernel NICs in the same subnet and VLAN to take advantage of the bandwidth. These need to be in new dedicated port groups for the new vMotion VMkernels.

- 31. Select the Port groups tab.
- 32. Right-click the vMotion port group and select the Edit settings option.
- 33. Expand the NIC Teaming section and select **Yes** for Override failover order.
- 34. Highlight vmnico and select Mark standby.
- 35. Highlight vmnic1 and select Mark active.
- 36. Click Save.
- 37. Repeat steps 32-36 if additional vMotion port groups were created.

Create the VSI Datacenter

If a new datacenter is needed, follow these steps on the vCenter:

 Connect to the vSphere Web Client and right-click the vCenter icon in the top left under the Hosts and Clusters tab, selecting the New Datacenter option from the drop-down list, or directly connect the Create Datacenter from the Getting Started page.

wigator 🖡 🕻	🕑 vc.ucp.cisco.	com 🚹	👛 🍪	E 🐼 🖓 🗛	ctions 👻								
	Getting Star Create Da Welcome to W You are ready first step is cre Adatacenter such as hosts might need or companies m represent orgi enterprise.	Summary tacenter (Center Serve to set up VCr adting a data contains all iti and virtual and ight use mut anizational ur	Monitor Add H r enter Servicenter. Inventory of machines. enter. Larg tiple datac nits in thei	Configure	Permissions Add Virtual Machin	Datacenters	Hosts & Clus	VMs	Datastores	Networks	Linked vCent	Extensions	Update Ma
	To get starte	d click Create	e Datacen r	ter	Explore Fi	urther nore about fold bout datacente	ers						

2. From the New Datacenter pop-up dialogue enter in a datacenter name and click OK.

1 New Datacente	er 🔅 🕨
Datacenter name:	HVCS-VSI
Location:	🖉 vc.ucp.cisco.com
	OK Cancel

Add the VMware ESXi Hosts Using the VMware vSphere Web Client

To add the VMware ESXi Hosts using the VMware vSphere Web Client, follow these steps:

1. From the Hosts and Clusters tab, right-click the new or existing Datacenter within the Navigation window and select **New Cluster...** from the drop-down list.

vmware [,] vSphere Web Client	U Launch vSphere Client (HTML5) Ad	ministrator@UCP.LOCAL + Hel
Navigator I HVCS-VSI	1 1 4 4 2 10 @Actions -	E.
Getting Started	Summary Monitor Configure Permissions Hosts & Clusters VMs Datastores Networks Update Manager	
Create Dat	tacenter Add Host Add Virtual Machine Complete set-up er that uses virtualization ESX or ESX, to run virtual a host to the inventory management of a vCenter ter running ESX or ESX	⊗ -
Ver VAD Inter Class, Deploy OVF Template Storage Edit Default VM Compatibility	Mware Web site for his product. must know the credentials e account (typically	55 (
Migrate VMs to Another Network Move To Rename Tags & Custom Attributes Add Permission	bt) and the location of the K Datacenter vCenter Server vSphere Client	
Alarms	Explore Further	
All vRealize Orchestrator plugin Actions Update Manager	ter Server setup, click Add a host. Learn more about datacenters Learn how to create datacenters	Ŧ

2. Enter a name for the new cluster, select the DRS and HA checkboxes, leaving all other options with the defaults.

🖏 New Cluster	() »
Name	G370-6.7
Location	HVCS-VSI
→ DRS	Turn ON
Automation Level	Fully automated
Migration Threshold	Conservative Aggressive
vSphere HA	Turn ON
Host Monitoring	✓ Enable host monitoring
Admission Control	✓ Enable admission control
✓ VM Monitoring	
VM Monitoring Status	Disabled Overrides for individual VMs can be set from the VM Overrides page from Manage Settings area.
Monitoring Sensitivity	Low High
▶ EVC	Disable +
vSAN	Turn ON
	OK Cancel

- 3. Click OK to create the cluster.
- 4. Right-click the newly created cluster and select the Add Host... drop-down option.

vmware• vSphere Web Client		U Launch vSphere Client (HTML5) Administrator@UCPLOCAL + Help
Navigator I 🚹 HVCS-VSI 😭	1월 1월 🦾 1월 @ Actions +	£*
Nevigator	Montor Configure Permissions Hosts & Clusters VMs Dataston Montor Configure Permissions Hosts & Clusters VMs Dataston Montor Configure Permissions Montor Configure Permissions Montor Configure Permissions Montor Configure Montor Con	es Networks Update Manager
Host Profiles Edit Default VM Compatibility Egit Assign License Settings Move To	vCenter Server vSphere Client	
Rename Tags & Custom Attributes Add Permission Alarms Z Delete All VRealize Orchestrator plugin Action Urdate Manager ve Aa	ver setup, click Add a host. Paper Further Learn more about datacenters Learn how to create datacenters Learn about hosts Learn about clusters Learn about folders	

5. Enter the IP or FQDN of the first ESXi host and click Next.

🕤 Add Host						(€ €
1 Name and location	Enter the name or IP addres	ss of the host to add to vCenter Server.				
2 Connection settings	Host name or IP address:	esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com				
3 Hostsummary	Location:	G370-6.7				
4 Resource pool	Type:	ESXi - 0				
5 Ready to complete		•				
			Back	Next	Finish	Cancel

- 6. Enter root for the User Name, provide the password set during initial setup and click Next.
- 7. Click Yes in the Security Alert pop-up to confirm the host's certificate.
- 8. Click Next past the Host summary dialogue.
- 9. Provide a license by clicking the green + icon under the License title, select an existing license or skip past the Assign license dialogue by clicking Next.
- 10. Leave the lockdown mode Disabled within the Lockdown mode dialogue window and click Next.

- 11. Skip past the Resource pool dialogue by clicking Next.
- 12. Confirm the Summary dialogue and add the ESXi host to the cluster by clicking Next.

1 Add Host			? ₩
 1 Name and location 	Name	esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com	
 2 Connection settings 	Version	VMware ESXi 6.7.0 build-10302608	
✓ 3 Host summary	License	License 2	
 4 Assign license 	Networks	VM Network	
✓ 5 Lockdown mode	Datastores	datastore1	
✓ 6 Resource pool	Lockdown mode	Disabled	
V 7 Ready to complete	Resources destination	G370-6.7	
			Back Next Finish Cancel

13. Repeat steps 1-12 for each ESXi host to be added to the cluster.

Create VMware vDS for Application Traffic

The VMware vDS setup will consist a single vDS for Application traffic.

To configure the first VMware vDS, follow these steps:

1. Right-click the HVCS-VSI datacenter and select **Distributed Switch** > **New Distributed Switch**...



2. Give the Distributed Switch a descriptive name and click Next.

La New Distributed Switch						(?) ₩
 New Distributed Switch 1 Name and location 2 Select version 3 Edit settings 4 Ready to complete 	Name and Specify dist Name: Location:	ocation ributed switch name and location. Application-DSwitch M HVCS-VSI				? >>
			Back	Next	Finish	Cancel

3. Make sure Distributed switch: 6.5.0 is selected if supporting vSphere 6.5 hosts and click Next.

🍐 New Distributed Switch		(?) >>
 1 Name and location 2 Select version 	Select version Specify a distributed switch version.	
3 Edit settings 4 Ready to complete	O Distributed switch: 6.6.0 This version is compatible with VMware ESXi version 6.6 and later. The following new features are available: MAC Learning.	
	 Distributed switch: 6.5.0 This version is compatible with VMware ESXI version 6.5 and later. The following new features are available: Port Mirroring Enhancements. 	
	Distributed switch: 6.0.0 This version is compatible with VMware ESXI version 6.0 and later. The following new features are available: Network I/O Control version 3, and IGMP/MLD snooping.	
	Back Next Finis	sh Cancel

4. Change the Number of uplinks to 2. If VMware Network I/O Control is to be used for Quality of Service, leave Network I/O Control Enabled. Otherwise, Disable Network I/O Control. Enter App-201 for the name of the default Port group to be created. Click Next.

Let New Distributed Switch		9	••
1 Name and location 2 Select version	Edit settings Specify number of uplin	nk ports, resource allocation and default port group.	
3 Edit settings 4 Ready to complete	Number of uplinks: Network I/O Control: Default port group: Port group name:	2 • Enabled • Create a default port group App-201]
		Back Next Finish Cancel	D,

5. Review the information and click Finish to complete creating the vDS.

Les New Distributed Switch						(4 (?)
 1 Name and location 2 Select version 	Ready to complete Review your settings selections before	e finishing the wizard.				
 3 Edit settings 4 Ready to complete 	Name: Version: Number of uplinks: Network I/O Control: Default port group: Suggested next actions New Distributed Port Group Add and Manage Hosts These actions will be available	Application-DSwitch 6.5.0 2 Enabled App-201	uted switch.			
			Back	Next	Finish	Cancel

- 6. Right-click the newly created App-DSwitch vDS, and select Settings -> Edit Settings...
- 7. Click the Advanced option for the Edit Settings window and change the MTU from 1500 to 9000.
- 8. Click OK to save the changes.
- 9. Right-click the App-201 Distributed Port Group, and select Edit Settings...
- 10. Click **VLAN**, changing **VLAN type** from None to VLAN, and enter in the appropriate VLAN number for the first application network.

The application Distributed Port Groups will not need to adjust their NIC Teaming as they will be Active/Active within the two vNICs uplinks associated to the Application-DSwitch, using the default VMware Route based on originating virtual port load balancing algorithm.

- 11. Click OK to save the changes.
- 12. Right-click the Application-DSwitch, selecting Distributed Port Group -> New Distributed Port Group... for any additional application networks to be created, setting the appropriate VLAN for each new Distributed Port Group.

Add Hosts to Application-DSwitch

6

To add the hosts to the newly created vDS from the Navigator, follow these steps:

1. Select the newly created Application-DSwitch.

vmware [,] vSphere Web Cli	ient ≜ ≣	Updated at 10:24 AM 💍	Launch vSphere Client (HTML5)	Administrator@UCPLOCAL ▼ He	elp -
Navigator I	👝 Application-DSwitch 🛛 😩 🤮 🧔) 🙆 Actions 🗸		E	*
	Getting Started Summary Monitor Configure	Permissions Ports Hosts VMs Networks			
Image: Second secon	What is a Distributed Switch? A distributed switch acts as a single virtual switch across all associated hosts. This allows virtual machines to maintain allows virtual machines to maintain switch across all associated hosts. This tributed Port Group ons - Application-DSwitch tributed Port Group 1 and Manage Hosts prace prace atings • cond part takes • tings • cond part takes • place at the • utual machine • utual machine • utual machine <td>VSphere Distributed Switch</td> <td></td> <td>\$</td> <td>Ē.</td>	VSphere Distributed Switch		\$	Ē.
	Basic Tasks	Explore Further			
	Add and manage hosts	Learn more about distributed			
	2 Create a new port group	Learn how to set up a network with a distributed switch			

2. Right-click it and select the Add and Manage Hosts... option.

🕼 Add and Manage Hosts	0
1 Select task 2 Select hosts	Select task Select a task to perform on this distributed switch.
 2 Select hosts 3 Select network adapter tasks 4 Manage physical network adapters 5 Manage vMkemel network adapters 6 Analyze impact 7 Ready to complete 	 Add new hosts to this distributed switch. Manage host networking Manage networking of hosts attached to this distributed switch. Remove hosts Remove hosts from this distributed switch. Add host and manage host networking (advanced) Add new hosts and manage networking of hosts already attached to this distributed switch. Use this option to unify the network configuration of new and existing hosts.
	Back Next Finish Cancel

3. Leave Add hosts selected and click Next.
4. Click the + New hosts... option.

C	Add and Manage Hosts				(?)
~	1 Selecttask	Select hosts Select hosts to add to this distribute	ed switch.		
	2 Select hosts				
	3 Select network adapter tasks	New hosts			
1	4 Manage physical network adapters	Host		Host Status	
	5 Manage VMkemel network		This lis	st is empty	
i.	adapters	Select new hosts		×	
	6 Analyze impact 7 Ready to complete	Incompatible Hosts		Q Filter	
		Host	Host State	Cluster	
		esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	G370-6.7	
		🗹 🗐 esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	🗊 G370-6.7	
2		🗹 📱 esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	G370-6.5	
		esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	G370-6.5	
		🗹 🗐 esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	🗊 G1500-6.7	
		esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	G1500-6.7	
		esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	G1500-6.5	
		🗹 🗐 esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	G1500-6.5	
		M (Q Find -)		8 items	
				OK Cancel	
				Back Next Finish	Cancel

- 5. Select the Hosts checkbox near the top of the pop-up window to select all hosts and click OK.
- 6. Select the Configure identical network settings on multiple hosts (template mode) checkbox.

Add and Manage Hosts				
1 Select task	Select hosts Select hosts to add to this distributed switch.			
 1 Selecttask 2 Select hosts 3 Select template host 4 Select network adapter tasks 5 Manage physical network adapters (template mode) 6 Manage VMkemel network adapters (template mode) 7 Analyze impact 8 Ready to complete 	Select hosts Select hosts to add to this distributed switch. New hosts Remove Host (New) esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com (New) esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.	Host Status Connected Connected		
	☑ Configure identical network settings on multiple	hosts (template mode).		
		Back Next Finish Cancel		

- 7. Click Next.
- 8. Select one of the hosts from the list shown below.

auu anu manaye nosis				
I Select task 2 Select hosts	Select template host Select a template host to apply its ne	atwork configuration on this switch to	the other hosts.	
3 Select template host				
Select network adapter tasks	Host 1	Physical Adapters - On This Switch / All	VMkernel Adapters - On This Switch / All	
Manage physical network	💿 👕 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com (0/4	0/3	
Manage VMkemel network	🔘 👕 esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/3	
adapters (template mode)	🔘 🕤 esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/3	
7 Analyze impact	🔘 🕤 esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/3	
Ready to complete	🔘 懫 esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/2	
	🔘 🕤 esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/2	
	🔿 👕 esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/2	
	🔘 🕤 esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com	0/4	0/2	
	Services (esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com)		
	Fault Tolerance logging:	-		
	Management:	vmk0		
	Provisioning:			
	vSphere Replication:	7 7		
	vSphere Replication NFC:			
	vMotion'	umir? umir1		

- 9. Click Next.
- 10. Deselect the Manage VMkernel adapters (template mode) option.



11. Click Next.

12. Select vmnic2.

1 Select task 2 Select hosts	Manage physical network adapters (templat Add or remove physical network adapters to	e mode) this distributed switch.		
 3 Select template host 4 Select network adapter tasks 	Configure or review physical network at	lapter assignments for the ti View settings	emplate host in this switch.	
⁵ adapters (template mode)	Host/Physical Network Adapters	1 A In Use by Switch	Uplink	Uplink Port Group
6 Analyze impact	- 📲 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com (template)			
7 Ready to complete	On this switch			
, ready to compress	 On other switches/unclaimed 			
	飅 vmnic0	vSwitch0	-	
	🕅 vmnic1	vSwitch0		
	对 vmnic2	-	-	-
	U00162			
	Apply the physical network adapter assi Apply to all Reset all Mew settle	gnments on this switch for t	he template host to all hosts	
	Host/Physical Network Adapters	1 A In Use by Switch	Uplink	Uplink Port Group
	- 🗑 esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com			
	On this switch			
	 On other switches/unclaimed 			
	🛤 vmnic0	vSwitch0	-	-
	vmnic1	vSwitch0	1.552	
	Villing 1			
	vmnic2			

13. Click the Assign uplink option.

14. Leave Uplink 1 selected.

Add and Manage Hosts				_	_	?
✓ 1 Selecttask Mana ✓ 2 Selecthosts	ge physical network adapters (templa Select an Uplink for vmnic2	te mode)	(8)]		
 3 Select template host 4 Select network adapter tasks Manage physical potwork 	Uplink Uplink 1	Assigned Adapter Witch		witch.		
S waitage physical network S analyze impact T Ready to complete	Uplink 2 (Auto-assign)			I hosts.	Uplink Port Group	
Host	On other switches/unclaimed vmnic0 vmnic1 vmnic2	OK vSwitch0 vSwitch0 -	Cancel 		Uplink Port Group	* 11
			Back	Nex	t Finish	Cancel

- 15. Click OK.
- 16. Select vmnic3 and click Assign uplink to select Uplink 2.

1 Select task 2 Select hosts	Manage physical network adapters (temp Add or remove physical network adapters	plate mode) s to this distributed switch.		
3 Select template host 4 Select network adapter tasks 5 Manage physical network	Configure or review physical network Assign uplink Reset changes	adapter assignments for the t	emplate host in this switch	L.
5 Manage physical network adapters (template mode)	Host/Physical Network Adapters	1 A In Use by Switch	Uplink	Uplink Port Group
6 Analyze impact	 On this switch 			
7 Ready to complete	vmnic2 (Assigned)	-	Uplink 1	Application-DSwi-DVUp
ready to complete	 On other switches/unclaimed 			
	对 vmnic0	vSwitch0	-	
	🕅 vmnic1	vSwitch0		
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a	vSwitch0 	 the template host to all host	
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all Mew s	vSwitch0		
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all View s Host/Physical Network Adapters	vSwitch0 assignments on this switch for t ettings 1 ▲ In Use by Switch		 Uplink Port Group
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all View s Host/Physical Network Adapters v esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com	vSwitch0		 Uplink Port Group
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all View s Host/Physical Network Adapters Sexi-2.hvcs.cisco.com On this switch	vSwitch0		 sts.
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all View s Host/Physical Network Adapters Sexi-2.hvcs.cisco.com On this switch On other switches/unclaimed	vSwitch0		 sts.
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all reference with the set of the	vSwitch0		
	vmnic1 vmnic3 Apply the physical network adapter a Apply to all Reset all reference of the set of the se	vSwitch0 assignments on this switch for t ettings 1 ▲ In Use by Switch vSwitch0 vSwitch0	the template host to all host Uplink:	 sts. Uplink Port Group

17. Click Apply to all.

 1 Select task 2 Select hosts 	Manage physical network adapters (tem Add or remove physical network adapter	plate mode) rs to this distributed switch.				
 3 Select template host 4 Select network adapter tasks 	 Configure or review physical network adapter assignments for the template host in this switch. Assign uplink Reset changes () New settings 					
⁵ adapters (template mode)	Host/Physical Network Adapters	1 A In Use by Switch	Uplink	Uplink Port Group		
6 Analyze impact	 On this switch 					
7 Ready to complete	vmnic2 (Assigned)	-	Uplink 1	Application-DSwi-DVUp		
r ready to complete	vmnic3 (Assigned)	-	Uplink 2	Application-DSwi-DVUp		
	 On other switches/unclaimed 			:		
	vmnic0	vSwitch0		-		
	ymnic1	vSwitch0		-		
				1		
	2 Apply the physical network adapter	assignments on this switch for t	the template host to all hos	its.		
	Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Mew Host/Physical Network Adapters	assignments on this switch for t settings 1 ▲ In Use by Switch	the template host to all hos	uplink Port Group		
	Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Mew a Host/Physical Network Adapters Sign esxi-2 hycs cisco com	assignments on this switch for t settings 1 ▲ In Use by Switch	the template host to all hos	uplink Port Group		
	 Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Reference Host/Physical Network Adapters Resxl-2.hvcs.cisco.com On this switch 	assignments on this switch for t settings 1 ▲ In Use by Switch	Uplink	uplink Port Group		
	 Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Retwork Adapters Reset all Retwork Adapters Resxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com On this switch wmnic2 (Assigned) 	assignments on this switch for t settings 1 ▲ In Use by Switch	Uplink Uplink 1	uplink Port Group		
	 Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Retwork Adapters Cast/Physical Network Adapters Cast/Physical Network Adapters On this switch Vmnic2 (Assigned) Vmnic3 (Assigned) 	assignments on this switch for the settings	Uplink Uplink 1 Uplink 2	Application-DSwi-DVUp		
	 Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Retwork Adapters Reset all Retwork Adapters Reset all Retwork Adapters Reset all Retwork Adapters On this switch vmnic2 (Assigned) On other switches/unclaimed 	assignments on this switch for the settings	the template host to all hos Uplink Uplink 1 Uplink 2	Application-DSwi-DVUp		
	 Apply the physical network adapter Apply to all Reset all Retwork Adapters Control Retwork Adapters Conthis switch Vmnic2 (Assigned) Vmnic3 (Assigned) On other switches/unclaimed Vmnic0 	assignments on this switch for the settings	the template host to all hos	Application-DSwi-DVUp Application-DSwi-DVUp		

- 18. Click Next.
- 19. Click Next past Analyze Impact.
- 20. Verify the summary in the Ready to complete screen.

Add and Manage Hosts		?
Add and Manage Hosts 1 Select task 2 Select hosts 3 Select template host 4 Select network adapter tasks 5 Manage physical network adapter tasks 6 Analyze impact 7 Ready to complete 	Ready to complete Review your settings selections before finishing the wizard. Number of managed hosts Hosts to add: 8 Number of network adapters for update Physical network adapters: 16	
	Back Next	Finish Cancel

21. Click Finish to add the hosts.

Add Datastores to Hosts

Datastores have been provisioned and zoned for the associated clusters. To add the datastores to the clusters, follow these steps:

1. From the Hosts tab of the Navigator. Right-click one of the hosts and select Storage -> New Datastore...

vmware [•] vSphere Web Clie	ent nh≘		Updated at 10:24	AM 👌 Launch vSphere Client (HTML5) Administrator@UCP.LOCAL	• Help •
Navigator	🖟 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com	8. D- D- 🔝 I 🥥 🕰	tions -			=*
	Getting Started Summary Mo	nitor Configure Permiss	ions VMs Datastores Netwo	rks Update Manager		
VC.ucp.cisco.com VC.	Getting Started Summary Mo What is a Host? Ahost is a computer that uses v software, such as ESX and ESX machines. Hosts provide the CF memory resources that vitual m and give vitual machines acces and network connectivity. ons - esxi-1 hvcs.cisco.com w Vitual Machine w Resource Pool	nitor Configure Permiss intualization , to run virtual U and u achines use s to storage c vSphere	ions VMs Datastores Netwo	ks Update Manager		0
Con Mai Pov Cen	nnection intenance Mode intenance Mode intenance transmission intenance inte	Exp chine Le Le	lore Further arn more about hosts arn how to create virtual mac	hines		
Stor	rage	🕘 New Datastore				
Add Add	d Networking d Diagnostic Partition	Add Virtual Flash Res	purce Capacity			
Hos	E Profiles	•				
Eur	port System Logs					
Rec Ear Ass	configure for vSphere HA sign License	-				
Set	tings					
Mov Tag	ve To Is & Custom Attributes					
The Recent Objects Add	d Permission rms					
Viewed Create Ren	move from Inventory					
Resxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com	associate Host vRealize Orchestrator plugin Actions date Manager	Target	Status Completed	UCPLOCAL\\Admini	For Start Time 1 ♥ Cor 47 ms 12/4/2018 12:35:59 12 66 mc 12/4/2019 12:25:50 12	mpletion Time //4/2018 12:35: ////2010 12:26

2. Leave VMFS selected and click Next.

Prev Datastore		(? H
A Ready to complete	Type Specify datastore type. • VMFS Create a VMFS datastore on a disk/LUN. • NFS Create an NFS datastore on an NFS share over the network. • Wol Create a Virtual Volumes datastore on a storage container connected to a storage provider.	
	Back Next Find	sh Cancel

3. Provide an appropriate Datastore name and select the appropriate LUN.

New Datastore							(3)
1 Type 2 Name and device selection 3 VMFS version 4 Partition configuration 5 Ready to complete	Name and device selection Select a name and a disk/LUN for provisioning the datas Datastore name: G370-Datastore1	tore.					
					Q F	lter	•
	Name	LUN	Capacity	Hardware Accel	Drive Type	Sector format	Snaps
	86					1 items	Copy -
				Back	Next	Finish	Canc

- 4. Click Next.
- 5. Leave VMFS 6 selected.

Part New Datastore		(* (°)
	VMFS version Specify the VMFS version for the datastore. • VMFS 6 VMFS 6 enables advanced format (512e) and automatic space reclamation support. • VMFS 5	
	VMFS 5 allows the datastore to be accessed by ESX/ESXi hosts of version 6.0 or earlier.	
	Back Next F	Finish Cancel

- 6. Click Next.
- 7. Leave the defaults for Partition configuration.

Part New Datastore							?)
 1 Type 2 Name and device selection 	Partition configuration Review the disk layout	and specify	partition configuration details.				
✓ 3 VMFS version	Partition Layout		Datastore Details				
4 Partition configuration			Partition Configuration	Use all available p	partitions		•
✓ 5 Ready to complete			Datastore Size		- 2,048.00	GB	
			Block Size	1 MB	-		
			Space Reclamation Granularity	1 MB	•		
			Space Reclamation Priority	None			Low
				Low: Deleted or un LUN at low priority	mapped blocks a	are reclaimed or	n the
	Capacity:	2.00 TB					
	Free Space:	2.00 TB					
				Back	Next	Finish	Cancel

- 8. Click Next.
- 9. Review the settings.
- 10. Click Finish to create.

Prev Datastore			(4 (S)
 1 Type 2 Name and device selection 3 VMFS version 	Ready to complete Review your settings selections befor	re finishing the wizard.	
 4 Partition configuration 5 Ready to complete 	Name: Type: Datastore size: Device and Formatting Disk/LUN: Partition Format: VMFS Version: Block Size: Space Reclamation Granularity: Space Reclamation Priority	G370-Datastore1 VMFS 2.00 TB HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e8012c99a005040c99a00000001) GPT VMFS 6 1 MB 1 MB Low: Deleted or unmapped blocks are reclaimed on the LUN at low priority	
		Back Next Finish	Cancel

11. Check each host in the clusters associated to the same VSP the datastore was provisioned from; all should show the configured datastore as available:

vmware [,] vSphere Web Cli	ent ≜ ≣		Updated	i at 10:24 AM 💍 Launch vSpher	e Client (HTML5) Adr	ministrator@UCPLOCAL +	Help
Navigator I	esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com	- B. D- D. B.	🚱 Actions 👻				=*
	Getting Started Summary N	Aonitor Configure F	Permissions VMs Datastores	Networks Update Manager			
Nevigator ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓ ↓	Resti-4.hvcs.cisco.com Getting Started Summary Datastores Name datastore1 (3) G370-Datastore1	Aonitor Configure F r.V C Browse Fil Status Normal Normal	Actions Cermissions VMs Datastores Cermissions VMs Datastores VMFS 5 VMFS 5 VMFS 6 Action of the second se	Networks Updale Manager	Capacity 92.5 GB 2 TB	Cq. Filter Free 88.63 GB 2 TB	
	86					2 Objects 🔒 Export 🚯	Сору -

12. If multiple VMFS datastore LUNs were deployed, repeat these steps on a host they are associated to by a Hitachi Host Group.

Configure NTP on ESXi Hosts

To configure Network Time Protocol (NTP) on the ESXi hosts, follow these steps on each host:

1. From the Configure tab, select the Time Configuration section under System.



- 2. Click Edit.
- 3. Select the Use Network Time Protocol (Enable NTP client) option.

	esxi-r.nvcs.cisco.com: Edit I	ime contiguration ?
Spe	ecify how the date and time on the	his host should be set.
\bigcirc	Manually configure the date and	time on this host
	12/04/2018 2:12 PM	~
	Use Network Time Protocol (En	able NTP client)
	NTP Service Status:	Stopped
		Start Stop Restart
		The NTP Service settings are updated when you click Start, Restart, or Stop.
	NTP Service Startup Policy:	Start and stop with host
		Start and stop with the host system
	NTP Servers:	10.1.168.254
		Separate servers with commas, e.g. 10.31.21.2, fe00::2800

- 4. Enter an appropriate NTP server within the NTP Servers box, change NTP Service Startup Policy to Start and stop with host, and click Start.
- 5. Verify that NTP service is now running and the clock is now set to approximately the correct time.



Create and Apply Patch Baselines with VUM

Critical patches are automatically available within VMware Update Manager (VUM) when using current versions of vCenter Server. A Patch Baseline will be made for the deployed vSphere release(s) and applied to each host to install appropriate patches.

To create the baselines and patch the new ESXi hosts, follow these steps:

- 1. From the Hosts tab select the vCenter and go to the Update Manager tab.
- 2. Click Go to Admin View.

vmware [®] vSphere Web Clie	ient ≜ ≡	Updated at 10-24 AM 👌 Launch vSphere Client (HTML5) Administrator@UCPLOCAL + Help ·
Navigator I	😰 vc.ucp.cisco.com 🛛 指 🎦 🍞 🕞 🛛 🎯 Actions 🗸	
	Getting Started Summary Monitor Configure Permissions	Datacenters Hosts & Clust VMs Datastores Networks Linked vCent Extensions Update Man
		Attach Baseline Scan for Updates Stage Patches Remediate Go to Admin View
	Querall compliance status: 🖌 Compliant	Navigat
↓ G1500-6.5		O Filter the upd
esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.com	Baseline Type	Compliance Status
G1500-6 7		
esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com		
esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com		
G370-6.5		
esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com		
→ 🗊 G370-6.7		
esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com		
(est-2.mes.esco.com		
		-
		NO ITEMS SEIECTED

- 3. From the Manage tab select Hosts Baselines.
- 4. Click +New Baseline...

X vc.ucp.cisco.com	*					
Getting Started Monitor Manage	e					
Settings Hosts Baselines VMs E	Baselines	Patch Repository ES	Xi Images			
Hosts Baselines						Go to compliance view
+ New Baseline		Q Filter	-	🕂 New Baseline G	roup	Q Filter
Baseline Name	Content	Туре	Dynamic	Group Name	Туре	i.
 Predefined 					This list is empt	ty.
🛅 Non-Critical Host P 🚯	213	Host Patch	Yes			
🛅 Critical Host Patche 🚯	59	Host Patch	Yes			
Custom						
				(A)		
4				i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i i		
26		4 items 📑 E	xpon - Copy -	26		0 items Export - Copy

5. Provide a name for the Baseline, leave the Baseline type selected as Host Patch, and click Next.

🗂 vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline			(?))
1 Name and type 2 Patch options	Name and type Enter a name a	and select the baseline type	
 3 Criteria 4 Patches to exclude 5 Additional patches 6 Ready to complete 	Name: Description: Baseline type: Host Pate Host Exte Host Upg Host Pate baseline for that ho	6.7 VSI Host	
		Back Next Finish Ca	ncel

6. Leave the Patch options set as Dynamic and click Next.

1	vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline		? >>	Ì
~	1 Name and type 2 Patch options	Patch options Select the type of patch baseline that you want to use.		
	 3 Criteria 4 Patches to exclude 5 Additional patches 6 Ready to complete 	 Fixed Fixed baselines remain the same even if new patches are added to the repository. Opnamic Dynamic baselines are updated when new patches meeting the specified criteria are added to the repository. 		
		Back Next Finish Ca	ancel	

- 7. Under Product, select the target vSphere release, and under Severity select Critical.
- 8. Click Next.

vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline			(1)
 1 Name and type 2 Patch options 	Criteria The following criteria determine the patches	included in this baseline.	
3 Criteria	Enter specific criteria to filter the list of patch	hes.	
4 Patches to exclude	Patch vendor:	Product:	
5 Additional patches	Any	Any	•
6 Ready to complete	VMware, Inc.	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	
		embeddedEsx 6.5.0	11
		embeddedEsx 6.7.0	Ŧ
	Severity:	Release date:	
	Any	On or after	
	Critical ::	On or before	
	Important		
	Moderate 👻		
	Category:	8 patches match the selected criteria	
	Any		
	Security ::		
	BugFix		
	Enhancement -		
		Back Next Finish Ca	ncel

9. Exclude any patches if appropriate and click Next.

1 Name and type 2 Patch options	Patche These basel	Patches to exclude These are the patches matching the dynamic baseline criteria. Select the ones that you want to permanently EXCLUDE from this baseline.					
3 Criteria	All (D) Selected Objects						
4 Patches to exclude 5 Additional patches		(b) deletied objetts		V III O Filter			
6 Ready to complete		Patch Name	Product	Release Date	Type		
		VMware ESXi 6.7 Patch Release	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/1/2018 8:00:00 PM	Rollup		
		Updates esx-base, esx-update,	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Update		
		Updates lpfc VIB	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Update		
		Updates brcmfcoe VIB	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Update		
		Updates nvme VIB	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Update		
		Updates Isu-Isi-Isi-mr3-plugin VIB	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Update		
		Updates esx-base, vsan and vs	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/1/2018 8:00:00 PM	Patch		
		VMware ESXi 6.7 Complete Up	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Rollup		
	4	п					
	84			8	items 🕒 Copy -		

10. Select any additional patches if appropriate and click Next.

1 Name and type 2 Patch options	Additional patches These are the patches NOT matchin baseline.	ig the dynamic baseline criteria. Sel	ect the ones to permanently INCLUDE	in the dynamic
3 Criteria				
4 Patches to exclude	All (0) Selected Objects			
5 Additional patches			📡 📑 (Q Filter	
6 Ready to complete	Patch Name	Product	Release Date	Туре
	Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	4/8/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	5/13/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates tools-light	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates misc-drivers	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates tools-light	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates scsi-bnx2i	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates sata-ahci	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates Isu-Isi-Isi-mr3-plugin	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates Isu-Isi-megaraid-sas	s-pl embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch
	Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update
	4			•
	86		264	items [Copy

11. Review the selections and click Finish.

🗂 vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline				? ₩
 1 Name and type 2 Patch options 	Ready to complete Review your settings selections bef	ore finishing the wizard.		
 3 Criteria 4 Patches to exclude 5 Additional patches 6 Ready to complete 	Baseline name Baseline description Baseline type Criteria Severity Category Product Vendor	6.7 VSI Host Host Patch Critical Any embeddedEsx 6.7.0 Any		
			Back Next Finish Can	cel ,

12. Go back to the Hosts view within Navigator.

vmware [,] vSphere Web Clie	ent ≜ ≣		Updated at	10:24 AM 💍 Launch v	Sphere Client (HTML5) Adminis	trator@UCPLOCAL - Help -
Navigator	🕒 HVCS-VSI 🚺 🎁 🗐	📥 😭 🎯 Actions 👻				=*
	Getting Started Summary M	onitor Configure Permis	sions Hosts & Clusters VN	Is Datastores Networks	Update Manager	
vc.ucp.cisco.com	Hosts Clusters Resource Po	Host Folders				
	🕤 Add Host 🌉 Enter Main	tenance Mode 🛛 🗛 Exit Mair	tenance Mode 🛛 🔂 Connect 👔	Power On 🔹 Reboot 🍇	Actions - 🏆 📑	Q Filter 🔹
esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.com	Name	1 A State	Status	Cluster	Consumed CPU %	Consumed Memory %
esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com	R esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	🔥 Warning	G370-6.7	0	11
🗢 🗊 G1500-6.7	🖳 esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	A Warning	🗊 G370-6.7	0	1.1
esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com	🔒 esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	🔥 Warning	G370-6.5	0	11
🗟 esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com	esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	A Warning	() G370-6.5	0	1.1
🖵 🗊 G370-6.5	R esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	🔥 Warning	G1500-6.7	0	11
esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com	esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	A Warning	G1500-6.7	0	11
esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com	esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	A Warning	G1500-6.5	0	11
G370-6.7	esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com	Connected	A Warning	G1500-6.5	D	11
esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com						

- 13. Select the Datacenter level of HVCS-VSI and within Hosts of the Hosts and Clusters tab select all hosts and click Enter Maintenance Mode.
- 14. For the first host associated with the vSphere release of the baseline, select the host and the Update Manager tab for that host.
- 15. Click Attach Baseline....

vmware [®] vSphere Web Cli	ent n ≘	Updated at 10:24 AM 💍 Launch vS	phere Client (HTML5) Administrator@UCPLOCAL - Help
Navigator I	🖁 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com 🛛 🛃 🛃 🕞 🗋 🔝	🙆 Actions 👻	≡*
	Getting Started Summary Monitor Configure Pe	ermissions VMs Datastores Networks Update Manager	
		Attach Baseline Scan for Updates	Stage Patches Remediate Go to Admin Mew
▼ hVCS-VSI	Overall compliance status: 🗸 Compliant 🛛 La	ist patch scan time	
esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.com			Q Filter
esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.com	Baseline	Туре	Compliance Status
G1500-6.7			
esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com			
→ 🕼 G370-6.5			
esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com			
🗸 🗊 G370-6.7			
esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com			
esxi	i-1.hvcs.cisco.com		

16. Select the appropriate Patch Baseline and click OK.

Iividual Baselines New Host Baseline Per Patch Baselines Patch Baselines Patch Baselines Patch Baselines Patch Iost Patches (Predefined) Extension Baselines Upgrade Baselines Upgrade Baselines Upgrade Baselines Instruction Instruc	Type Host Pate Host Pate Host Pate	ch ch ch	
New Host Baseline Patch Baselines Patch Baselines Control Host Patches (Predefined) Critical Host Patches (Predefined) Extension Baselines Upgrade Baselines Upgrade Baselines seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne	Type Host Pate Host Pate Host Pate	ch ch ch	
Patch Baselines Patch Baselines Comparison of the set	Type Host Patr Host Patr Host Patr	ch ch ch	
Patch Baselines	 Host Pate Host Pate Host Pate 	ch ch ch	
	 Host Pate Host Pate Host Pate 	ch ch	
Image: Seline Groups New Host Baseline Group	Host Pate Host Pate	ch ch	
Critical Host Patches (Predefined) Extension Baselines Upgrade Baselines seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne	Host Pate	ch	
Extension Baselines Upgrade Baselines Upgrade Baselines seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
Upgrade Baselines seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
seline Groups New Host Baseline Group ne			
New Host Baseline Group			
New Host Baseline Group			
ne			
	Туре		

17. Click Remediate.

vmware [®] vSphere Web Clie	ent ≜ ≣		Updated at 10:24 AM	U Launch vSphere Client (HTML5)	Administrator@UCPLOCAL - Help
Navigator	🗧 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com 🛛 🔒 🚦	- 🕞 🔂 🙆 🖓 🕰	tions +		Z.
	Getting Started Summary Monitor	Configure Permissio	ns VMs Datastores Networks	Update Manager	
Image: Constraint of the second s	Overali compliance status: 🍘 Unk	nown Last patch	Attach Baseline	Scan for Updates Stage Patches	Remediate Go to Admin View
↓ []] G1500-6.5	🕅 Detach Baseline 🐂 🍯				Q Filter
esxi-7.nvcs.cisco.com	Baseline		Compliance Status		
G1500-6.7	 Independent baselines 				
esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com	6.7 VSI Host	0	Host Patch	③ Unknown	
→ 🗍 G370-6.5					
esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com					
→ 🗊 G370-6.7					
esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com					
esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com					
			m112		
	Summary: 8 applicable patches out	of 8 total			S 📑 (q. Filter -
	Update Name	Patch ID	Compliance Status	Severity	Impact
	VMware ESXI 6.7 Patch Release	ESXi670-201810001	② Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode
	Updates esx-base, esx-update,	ESXi670-201810201-U	3 🛞 Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode
	Updates lpfc VIB	ESXi670-201810204-U	G () Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode
	Updates brcmfcoe VIB	ESXi670-201810206-U	G (2) Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode
	Updates nvme VIB	ESXi670-201810213-U	G (2) Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode
	Updates Isu-Isi-Isi-mr3-plugin VIB	ESXi670-201810214-U	G () Unknown	Critical	Reboot
	Updates esx-base, vsan and vs	ESXI670-201810401-B	3 (2) Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode
	VMware ESXi 6.7 Complete Up	ESXi670-Update01	② Unknown	Critical	Reboot, Maintenance Mode

18. Leave the baseline selected and click Next.

a esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com - Remed	liate			(? H				
1 Select baselines	Select baselines Select baselines to remediate.	Select baselines						
2 Select target objects								
3 Advanced options	Baseline Groups and Types	Baselines						
4 Host remediation options	Name		Q Filter	•				
5 Ready to complete	Baseline Groups	Baseline Name	<u></u>					
	Individual Baselines by Type	6.7 VSI Host		0				
	 Patch Baselines 							
		44	1 items	Copy -				
		Ba	ck Next Finish	Cancel				

19. Select the hosts appropriate to the vSphere release specified for the baseline and click Next.

vmware [,] vSphere Web Clie	ent f i≘		Updated at 10	24 AM 🕐 Launch vS	phere Client (HTML5)	Administrator@UCPLOCAL - H	
Navigator I	🕒 HVCS-VSI 📲 👹 🍪 🌥 👘 🕴	Actions +				1	
	Getting Started Summary Monitor Con	figure Permissions Hosts &	Clusters VMs	Datastores Networks	Update Manager		
VC.UCP.CISCO.COM	Overall compliance status: @ Unknown		Attach Base	line Csan for Updates	s Stage Patches	Remediate Go to Admin View	
√ []] G1500-6.5	👧 Detach Baseline 🐂 🎽		Q Filter				
esxi-7.1ives.cisco.com	Baseline	Туре			Compliance Status		
→ 🕼 G1500-6.7	Independent baselines		_		2.1		
📓 esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com	HVCS-VSI - Remediate						
₩ esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.com ↓ ₩ G370-6.5 ₩ esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com	 1 Select baselines 2 Select target objects 	Select target objects Select the target objects of yo	ur remediation.				
esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com	3 Patches and extensions					Q Filter •	
↓ [] G370-6.7	4 Advanced options	Host Name 1	Version Patches	s Extens Upgrades	Boot	Last Pa	
B esti-2 hvcs cisco com	5 Host remediation options	🗹 🧧 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
	6 Cluster remediation options	🗹 🖥 esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
	7 Ready to complete	esxi-3.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
		esxi-4.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
	C	esxi-5.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
		esxi-6.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
	Obje	esxi-7.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
		🔲 🗧 esxi-8.hvcs.cisco.c	VM 8 (0		Normal		
		86				8 items 🍙 Copy 🗸	
			_		Back Next	Finish Cancel	

20. Deselect any patches that should not be applied and click Next.

1 Select baselines 2 Select target objects	Patches and extensions Select the specific patches and extensions that you want to apply.											
3 Patches and extensions 4 Advanced options 5 Hostremediation options	 Your remediation includes a dynamic baseline. The exact list of applicable patches might change before remediation oc Even if the list does change, any patch that you exclude now will not be applied. All (8) Selected Objects 											
6 Cluster remediation options			Q Filter	•								
7 Ready to complete		Patch Name	# Hosts	Product	Release Date	Тур						
	1	Updates esx-base, esx-update,	@ 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Up						
	1	Updates esx-base, vsan and vs	@ 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/1/2018 8:00:00 PM	Pa						
	1	Updates lpfc VIB		embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Up						
	1	Updates brcmfcoe VIB	2 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Up						
	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	VMware ESXi 6.7 Complete Up	@ 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Ro
									VMware ESXi 6.7 Patch Release	2 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/1/2018 8:00:00 PM
	1	Updates nvme VIB	② 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Up						
		Updates Isu-Isi-Isi-mr3-plugin VIB	② 4	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	10/15/2018 8:00:00 PM	Up						
	4	1				•						
	M 8 items 🕒 Copy -											

- 21. Click Next past the Advanced options screen.
- 22. Click Next past the Host remediation options screen.
- 23. Click Next past the Cluster remediation options.
- 24. Review the settings and click Finish to run the patch baseline.

🚱 HVCS-VSI - Remediate			(?) H					
1 Select baselines 2 Select target objects	Ready to complete Review your settings selections before finishing the wizard.							
 3 Patches and extensions 4 Advanced options 5 Host remediation options 	Generate a report of the current configuration and changes during remediation: Pre-check Remediation							
✓ 6 Cluster remediation options	Baselines							
7 Ready to complete	Remediation type	Host remediation						
	 Patch baselines 	1						
	Target Objects							
	 Hosts 	4						
	Patches and Extensions							
	 Patches 	8						
	Advanced options Remediation time	Immediately						
	Quick boot	Disabled						
	Maintenance mode options	Do Not Change VM Power State	×					
		Back	Next Finish Cancel					

vSphere nfnic and nenic Baseline Creation through VUM

With the current Cisco custom ISO for 6.7 U1 and the 4.0(2b) UCSM code, there may be some FC path inconsistencies if a newer nfnic driver is not applied to the ESXi hosts. The following steps will show the creation of a baseline within VUM for these updated drivers, and the CLI update option will be explained as well following this section.

The two drivers updated within this validation can be downloaded from the VMware site:

nfnic - <u>https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=DT-ESXI67-CISCO-NFNIC-</u> <u>40033&productId=742</u>

nenic - https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=DT-ESXI67-CISCO-NENIC-10270&productId=742

Each of these downloads will come as a zip file to be extracted:

- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nfnic-4.0.0.33-13031113.zip
- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nenic-1.0.27.0-11271332.zip

The folders created from each extracted bundle will contain an offline_bundle zip file that will stay compressed:

- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nfnic-4.0.0.33-offline_bundle-13031113.zip
- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nenic-1.0.27.0-offline_bundle-11271332.zip

To create the driver baselines and patch the new ESXi hosts within VUM, follow these steps:

- 1. From the Hosts tab select the vCenter and go to the Update Manager tab.
- 2. Click Go to Admin View.

vmware [®] vSphere Web Clie	ient ≜ ≣	Updated at 10:24 AM	U Launch vSphere Client (HTML5) Administrator@UCPLOCAL • Help •
Navigator I	😰 vc.ucp.cisco.com 🛛 🎦 🏷 😼 🛛 🎯 Action	ns 🕶	
	Getting Started Summary Monitor Configure F	Permissions Datacenters Hosts & Clust	t VMs Datastores Networks Linked vCent Extensions Update Man
		Attach Baseline	Scan for Updates Stage Patches Remediate Go to Admin View
	→ T		Q Filter object.
esxi-9.htcs.cisco.com	Baseline	Туре	Compliance Status
Resxi-5.hvcs.cisco.com			
G370-6.5 Gesxi-3.hvcs.cisco.com Gesxi-4.hvcs.cisco.com			
esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com			
		No items selecte	ъd

3. From the Manage tab select Hosts Baselines.

🚳 vc.ucp.cisco.com	🚳 Actions 👻							
Monitor Manage								
Settings Hosts Base	lines VMs Baselines	Patch Repository ESX	i Images					
Patch Repository							Download No	
							Download He	
🥋 Import Patches							× 💵	Q Filter
Patch Name	Product	Release Date	Туре	Severity	Category	Impact	Vendor	Patch ID
Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	4/8/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Critical	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenanc	∨Mware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150440
Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	5/13/2015 8:00:00 P	Patch	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150540
Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Critical	Security	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150710
Updates tools-light	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Important	Security		VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150710
Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Critical	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenan	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates misc-drivers	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates tools-light	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Critical	BugFix		VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates scsi-bnx2i	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenan	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates sata-ahci	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates Isu-Isi-Isi	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Critical	BugFix		VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates Isu-Isi-me	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	7/6/2015 8:00:00 PM	Patch	Critical	BugFix		VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150740
Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Critical	Security	Reboot, Maintenan	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150910
Updates tool-light	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	Security		VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150910
Updates esx-base	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Critical	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenan	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates tools-light	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	BugFix		VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates Isu-Isi-mpt	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	BugFix		VMware, Inc.	ESXI600-20150920
Updates misc-drivers	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenan	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates xhci-xhci	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates sata-ahci	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	BugFix	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates Isi-msgpt3	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	Enhancement	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates Isi-mr3	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	Enhancement	Reboot, Maintenanc	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Updates vsanhealth	embeddedEsx 6.0.0	9/9/2015 8:00:00 PM	Update	Important	BugFix	Reboot	VMware, Inc.	ESXi600-20150920
Lindataa numa	ombaddadEav 6.0.0	0/0/2015 0-00-00 DM	Undata	Important	Dustiv	Debast Maintanan	VAluara Inc	EQVIEOD 20450024

- 4. Click the **Import Patches...** under the Patch Repository heading.
- 5. Click the **Browse...** button and find the first offline_bundle zip file to be uploaded.

1 Upload patches	Unload patches	
2 Ready to complete	Select a .zip file containing the patches you want to import in the repository.	
2 Ready to complete	The upload might take a several minutes to complete. Keep the wizard open until the upload completes. Patches .zip file: File name: No file chosen	Browse

- 6. Click Next after the file has uploaded.
- 7. Review the summary from the Ready to complete screen and click Finish.
- 8. Repeat steps 4-7 for the second offline_bundle zip.
- 9. From the Manage tab select Hosts Baselines.
- 10. Click +New Baseline...

🚳 vc.ucp.cisco.com 🛛 🚱 Actions	5 🔻								
Monitor Manage									
Settings Hosts Baselines VMs I	Base	lines Patch R	epository ESXi In	nages					
Hosts Baselines									Go to compliance view
🕂 New Baseline				Q Filter	•		🕂 New Baseline Group		Q Filter 👻
Baseline Name		Content	Туре	Dynamic	Last Modifi	0	Broup Name	Туре	
✓ Predefined								This list is empty.	
Mon-Critical Host Patch	0	253	Host Patch	Yes	11/15/20				
Critical Host Patches (0	68	Host Patch	Yes	11/15/20				
6.5 VSI Host	0	22	Host Patch	Yes	4/16/201				
6.7 VSI Host	0	13	Host Patch	Yes	4/16/201				
M			6 it	tems 🗳 Export	- Copy -	4	M		0 items 🕒 Export - 🍙 Copy -
			01				11		

11. Provide a name for the baseline and leave Host Patch selected for Baseline type.

C vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline			? ₩
vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline Name and type Patch options Criteria Patches to exclude Additional patches Ready to complete	Name and type Enter a name a Name: Description: Baseline type: • Host Patch	6.7 DAS Driver Updates	4 (5)
	 Host Exter Host Upgr Host Patcl baseline of for that host 	bility. If the will be ignored	
		Back	Next Finish Cancel

- 12. Click Next.
- 13. Select Fixed for the Patch options.

	vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline		(?) }
~	1 Name and type	Patch options Select the type of patch baseline that you want to use.	
	3 Datches		
	3 Patches 4 Ready to complete	 Fixed Fixed baselines remain the same even if new patches are added to the repository. Dynamic Dynamic baselines are updated when new patches meeting the specified criteria are added to the repository. 	
		Back Next Finish Ca	ancel

14. Click Next.

15. Enter "cisco" in the search filter and select the appropriate patches that come up in the results.

T vc.ucp.cisco.com - New Baseline							
 1 Name and type 2 Patch options 	Patches These are all patches in the repository. Sele	ase are all patches in the repository. Select the ones to include in the fixed baseline. All (2) Selected Objects					
3 Patches	All (2) Selected Objects						
4 Ready to complete		📡 📑 🔽 cisco 🕞					
	Patch Name	Product	Release Date	Туре			
	Infnic: Cisco UCS VIC Native fNI	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	3/27/2019 8:00:00 PM	Host Extens			
	nenic: Cisco VIC Native driver f	embeddedEsx 6.7.0	12/12/2018 7:00:00 PM	Host Extens			
	-						
	4			Þ			
	A43		2 of 321 items	s 🖹 Copy 🛨			
			Back Next Finish	Cancel			

16. Click Next.

- 17. Review the Ready to complete summary and click **Finish**.
- 18. Return to the Datacenter host view and select the host(s) to patch.
- 19. Place the hosts in maintenance mode and select the Update Manager tab for the host.

Navigator	🖥 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com 🛛 🛃 🛃 🕞	3 💽 🛞 Actions 👻		≡*
	Summary Monitor Configure Permissions	VMs Datastores Networks More Objects Update Manag	Jer -	
		A	tach Baseline Scan for Updates Stage Patches Remediate	Go to Admin View
	Overall compliance status; 🗸 Compliant	Last natch scan time 4/17/2019 2:07 PM		
▶ 🕼 G1500-6.5 ▶ 🛍 G1500-6.7)— "E		Q Filter	-
G370-6.5	Baseline	Туре	Compliance Status	
→ 🗒 G370-6.7	 Independent baselines 			
esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com (maintenance mode)	6.7 VSI Host	Host Patch	 Compliant 	
Resxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com	6.5 VSI Host	Host Patch	 Compliant 	
iom-ctlr				
₩-01				
₩-02				
W-U3				
00 VM-04				
A VM-08				

- 20. Click the Attach Baseline... button.
- 21. Select the created driver update baseline.

🙀 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com - Attach Baseline or Baseline Group				(?) N
Individual Baselines				
To New Host Baseline				
Name		Туре		
▼ Patch Baselines				
🗹 🌆 6.7 DAS Driver Updates	0	Host Patch		
6.5 VSI Host	0	Host Patch		
🔲 🌆 Non-Critical Host Patches (Predefined)	0	Host Patch		
Critical Host Patches (Predefined)	0	Host Patch		
Extension Baselines				
Upgrade Baselines				
Baseline Groups				
New Host Baseline Group				
Name		Туре		
			ОК	Cancel

22. Click **OK** to attach the baseline.

- 23. Click the **Remediate...** button.
- 24. Select the driver updates baseline.

🔖 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com - Remediat	te		
1 Select baselines	Select baselines Select baselines to remediate.		
2 Select target objects			
5 Patches and extensions	Baseline Groups and Types	Baselines	
4 Advanced options	Name	Q Filter	•
5 Host remediation options	Baseline Groups	Baseline Name	
6 Ready to complete	Individual Baselines by Type	🔲 🛅 6.7 VSI Host	0
	 Patch Baselines 	6.5 VSI Host	0
		6.7 DAS Driver Updates	0
		MA 3 items	ру 🕶
		Back Next Finish Car	ncel

- 25. Click Next.
- 26. Click **Next** past the Select target objects screen.
- 27. Click **Next** past the Patches and extensions screen.
- 28. Click **Next** past the Advanced options screen.
- 29. Click **Next** past the Host remediation options.
- 30. Click Next past the Cluster remediation options.
- 31. Review the Ready to complete summary and click Finish to apply the patches.
- 32. Repeat steps 19 to 31 for each additional host.

vSphere nfnic and nenic Patching through esxcli

With the current Cisco custom ISO for 6.7 U1 and the 4.0(2b) UCSM code, there may be some FC path inconsistencies if a newer nfnic driver is not applied to the ESXi hosts. The following steps will show the installation of these updated drivers using the CLI update option.

The two drivers updated within this validation can be downloaded from the VMware site:

nfnic - <u>https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=DT-ESXI67-CISCO-NFNIC-</u> 40033&productId=742

nenic - <u>https://my.vmware.com/group/vmware/details?downloadGroup=DT-ESXI67-CISCO-NENIC-10270&productId=742</u>

Each of these downloads will come as a zip file to be extracted:

- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nfnic-4.0.0.33-13031113.zip
- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nenic-1.0.27.0-11271332.zip

The folders created from each extracted bundle will contain an offline_bundle zip file that will stay compressed:

- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nfnic-4.0.0.33-offline_bundle-13031113.zip
- VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nenic-1.0.27.0-offline_bundle-11271332.zip

To install VMware VIC Drivers on the ESXi hosts using the esxcli, follow these steps:

- 1. Upload the offline_bundles to a commonly accessible datastore using the vSphere Web Client.
- 2. Within the vSphere Web Client, select one of the datastore and click on the Files tab.

vmware vSphere Web Client					U Launch vSphere Client (HTML5) Administrator@UCPLOCAL - Help -
Navigator	G370_Perf_VMF \$-000	🔐 🔽 C 🗷 🔯 🧔	Actions +			≡.×
	Summary Monitor Conf	Igure Permissions Files	Hosts VMs			
Image: Constraint of the second s	[G370_Perf_VMFS-00	0]				🛃 🛛 C 🐂 🗅 🛶 🗙
datastore1 (1)		Name	Size	Modified	Туре	Path
ESVi 5 Rest	▶ 🗂 VM-01	🛅 VM-01			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-01
ESXI-5_BOOT	▶ 🗂 VM-08				Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-08
ESXI-7 Boot	sdd sf	.sdd.sf			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] .sdd.sf
ESXI-8 Boot	COULDI	1 VM-03			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-03
G1500-Mgmt-001		iom-ctlr			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] IOM-CTLR
G1500_65_DS-001	▶ IOM-CILR	► VM-02			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-02
G1500_65_DS-002	▶ 🚞 VM-02	vmkdump			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] vmkdump
G1500_67_DS-001	Image:	.dvsData			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] .dvsData
G1500_67_DS-002	dvsData	► VM-05			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-05
G370_Perf_VMFS-000	▶ 🚞 VM-05	► VM-04			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-04
UCP-A_Test-04	▶ 🚞 VM-04	► VM-07			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-07
UCP-A_Test-5	▶ 🗂 VM-07	.vSphere-HA			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] .vSphere
	VSphere-HA	✓M-06			Folder	[G370_Perf_VMFS-000] VM-06
	▶ 🚍 VM-06					

- 3. Click the Upload a file to the Datastore button.
- 4. Select and upload the nfnic offline_bundle (VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nfnic-4.0.0.33-offline_bundle-13031113.zip) from the extracted driver download.
- 5. Select and upload the nenic offline_bundle (VMW-ESX-6.7.0-nenic-1.0.27.0-offline_bundle-11271332.zip) from the extracted driver download.
- 6. Place all hosts in Maintenance mode requiring update.
- 7. Connect to each ESXi host through ssh from a shell connection or putty terminal.
- 8. Login as root with the root password.
- 9. Run the following commands (substituting the appropriate datastore directory as needed) on each host:

```
esxcli software vib update -d /vmfs/volumes/G370_Perf_VMFS-000/VMW-ESX-6.7.0-
nfnic-4.0.0.33-offline_bundle-13031113.zip
esxcli software vib update -d /vmfs/volumes/G370_Perf_VMFS-000/V
MW-ESX-6.7.0-nenic-1.0.27.0-offline_bundle-11271332.zip
```

10. Reboot each host by typing ${\tt reboot}$ from the SSH connection after the command has been run.

Remediation of L1 Terminal Fault – VMM (L1TF) Security Vulnerability (Optional)

CVE-2018-3646 describes a new class of CPU speculative-execution vulnerabilities on Intel processors manufactured from 2009 to 2018. While optional, it is strongly recommended that these vulnerabilities be patched.

Multiple attack vectors are exposed through these vulnerabilities, and separate mitigation steps for each attack vector are necessary for complete mitigation. For more information about the specific impact and VMware's recommendations for remediation of these vulnerabilities in a VMware vSphere environment, refer to this VMware Knowledge Base article: https://kb.vmware.com/s/article/55806.

The mitigation for L1TF-VMM as recommended by VMware is broken up into three distinct phases:

- 1. Updating VMware vCenter and VMware ESXi software.
- 2. Planning and Utilization of the HTAware Mitigation Tool (if analyzing existing workloads).
- 3. Enablement of the ESXi Side-Channel-Aware Scheduler.

Update VMware vCenter and VMware ESXi Software

VMware vCenter must be running at specific patch levels prior to mitigation of the L1TF-VMM vulnerabilities. Table 15 lists the release version of VMware vCenter and the specific patch level that needs to be running on the vCenter managing the environment.

Table 15 VMware vCenter Versions Required for L1TF-VMM Mitigation

1.0		
	VMware vCenter Version	Patch Level Required for L1TF-VMM Mitigation
	6.7	6.7.od
	6.5	6.5U2C

VMware ESXi must also be running at specific patch levels prior to mitigation of the L1TF-VMM vulnerabilities. If you use the Cisco custom ISOs for VMware vSphere 6.5 and 6.7 described in this guide to install the hypervisor, no action is necessary to update the ESXi servers in the environment. Table 16 lists the minimum Cisco ISO version that must be used to ensure no patching of the ESXi servers is necessary.

Table 16 Minimum Cisco ISO Versions Required for L1TF-VMM Mitigation

VMware ESXi Version	Minimum Cisco ISO Version Required
6.7 U1	VMware_ESXi_6.7.0_10302608_Custom_Cisco_6.7.1.1.iso
6.5 U2	VMware-ESXi-6.5.0-9298722-Custom-Cisco-6.5.2.2.iso

Planning and Utilization of the HTAware Mitigation Tool

It is important to understand the impact to maximum performance on a host when comparing L1TF-VMM non-mitigated and mitigated environments. You must take these impacts into consideration whether you are deploying a greenfield environment, or simply adding capacity to an existing environment. VMware provides an article regarding capacity planning considerations and tested performance degradation when the L1TF-VMM vulnerabilities are remediated: https://kb.vmware.com/s/article/55767.

Consider using the PowerShell <u>HTAware Mitigation Tool</u> from VMware to analyze existing non-mitigated environments that you may be migrating virtual infrastructure from. This allows you to understand if there are any virtual machine configurations that may be impacted when moved to a mitigated environment.

Enablement of the ESXi Side-Channel-Aware Scheduler (vSphere Web Client Method)

When a non-mitigated host is running a patched version of ESXi, a suppressible warning message is displayed in the host Summary tab as shown below:

Summary	Monitor	Configure P	ermissions	VMs	Datastores	Networks	More Objects	Update Manager
		esxi-1.hvcs.cisco Hypervisor: Model: Processor Type: Logical Processo NICs:	D.com VMw are E Cisco Syst Intel(R) Xee rs: 32 4	SXi, 6.7 iems Inc on(R) S	.0, 10302608 : UCSB-B200-N ilver 4110 CPU	15 @ 2.10GHz		
		State: Uptime:	Connected 78 minutes					

This host is potentially vulnerable to issues described in CVE-2018-3646, please refer to https://kb.vmware.com/s/article/55636 for details and VMware recommendations.

To use the vSphere Web Client to remediate a host, follow these steps:

- 1. Place the host to be mitigated into Maintenance Mode.
- 2. Select the ESXi host from the inventory, click the Configure tab, then click System-> Advanced System Settings.

🛿 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com 🛛 🛃 🛃	🖁 esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com 🛛 🐉 👪 🗋 🖉 🖄 🛵 I 🎯 Actions 🗸 🔤						
Summary Monitor Configure Per	missions VMs Datastores Networks More Objects Updat	te Manager					
44	Advanced System Settings		Edit				
VMkernel adapters			O Filter				
Physical adapters	Name	Value	Summary				
TCP/IP configuration	Annotations.WelcomeMessage	-	A welcome message in the initial screen of the Direct Console U				
Advanced	BufferCache.FlushInterval	30000	Flush at this interval (milliseconds)				
✓ Virtual Machines	BufferCache.HardMaxDirty	95	Block writers if this many buffers are dirty (percent)				
VM Startup/Shutdown	BufferCache.PerFileHardMaxDirty	50	Block writers if this many buffers of a given file are dirtied (percent)				
Swap file location	BufferCache.SoftMaxDirty	15	Flush immediately if this many buffers are dirty (percent)				
Default VM Compatibility	CBRC.DCacheMemReserved	400	Memory consumed by CBRC Data Cache (in MB)				
	CBRC.DCacheSize	32768	Size of CBRC Data Cache in MB. This cannot be changed if CB				
Licensing	CBRC.DigestJournalBootInterval	10	Interval (in minutes) for which Digest Journal is temporarily disab				
Time Configuration	CBRC.Enable	false	Enable Content Based Read Cache				
Authentication Services	Config.Defaults.security.host.ruissl	true	Require SSL to be used when communicating with the host over				
Certificate	Config.Defaults.vGPU.consolidation	false	Assignment policy to place shared passthru graphics VMs on sa				
Power Management	Config.Etc.issue		Contents of /etc/issue				
Advanced System Settings	Config.Etc.motd	The time and date of this login have been sent to the system logs.	Contents of /etc/motd				
System Resource Reservation	Config.GlobalSettings.guest.commands.sharedPolicyRefCount	0	Reference count to enable guest operations.				
Security Profile	Config.HostAgent.level[Hbrsvc].logLevel		Logging level for the loggers related to HBR services.				
Host Drofile	Config.HostAgent.level[Hostsvc].logLevel		Logging level for the loggers related to Host services.				
- Hardware	Config.HostAgent.level[Proxysvc].logLevel	-	Logging level for the loggers related to proxy services.				
Processors	Config.HostAgent.level[Snmpsvc].logLevel	-	Logging level for the loggers related to SNMP services.				
Memory	Config.HostAgent.level[Statssvc].logLevel	-	Logging level for the loggers related to Stats services.				
	0		v				

 Click Edit in the Advanced System Settings pane, then use the Filter box to search for VMkernel.Boot.hyperthreadingMitigation. Check the Enabled checkbox for the VMkernel.Boot.hyperthreadingMitigation system setting and click OK.

ŀ	esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com - Edit Advanced System Settings						
Δ	Modifying configuration parameters is unsupported and can cause instability. Continue only if you know what you are doing.						
			Q hreadingMitigation -				
N	ame	Value	Summary				
V	Mkernel.Boot.hyperthreadingMitigation	Enabled	Restrict the simultaneous use of logica				
			OK Cancel				

4. Reboot the host and exit Maintenance Mode. The warning message for CVE-2018-3646 should no longer appear in the host Summary tab.

Enablement of the ESXi Side-Channel-Aware Scheduler (PowerShell HTAware Mitigation Tool Method)

Additional benefits of the HTAware Mitigation Tool are its capabilities to analyze and mitigate hosts in a batch fashion on a per-cluster or per-host basis. This is particularly convenient if you have just deployed multiple hosts that have not been put into production and are not yet servicing workloads.

To use the HTAware Mitigation Tool to remediate an idle cluster of hosts, follow these steps:

- 1. Place all hosts in the cluster into maintenance mode.
- 2. If you have not already installed the HTAware Mitigation Tool PowerShell cmdlets, follow the instructions within <u>VMware KB 56931</u> to setup and import them.
- 3. Open a Windows PowerShell command window as Administrator and connect to your vCenter server managing the cluster to be remediated with the "**Connect-VIServer**" cmdlet.



4. Query the remediation status of the hosts in a specific cluster by using the "Get-HTAwareMitigationConfig -ClusterName <name of cluster>" cmdlet. ConfiguredHTAMSetting and RuntimeHTAMSetting should both be false on non-remediated hosts.

🔁 Administrator: Windows PowerShell		_		×		
PS C:\Windows\System32	2> Get-HTAwareMitigationConfig -ClusterName G370-6.7			^		
VMHost ConfiguredHTAMSetting RuntimeHTAMSetting SuppressHTAMSetting Version Build	: esxi-1.hvcs.cisco.com : FALSE : FALSE : FALSE : FALSE : 6.7.0 : 10302608					
VMHost ConfiguredHTAMSetting RuntimeHTAMSetting SuppressHTAMSetting Version Build	: esxi-2.hvcs.cisco.com : FALSE : FALSE : FALSE : FALSE : 6.7.0 : 10302608					
PS C:\Windows\System32	>_					
				~		

If **ConfiguredHTAMSetting** and **RuntimeHTAMSetting** values are "N/A", then the host is not running a patched version of ESXi that supports remediation. Ensure the host is running a version of ESXi which contains the patches necessary to remediate the L1TF-VMM vulnerability.

5. Enable the ESXi Side-Channel-Aware Scheduler by using the "Set-HTAwareMitigationConfig -ClusterName <name of cluster> -Enable" cmdlet.



6. Reboot the hosts and exit Maintenance Mode. The warning message for CVE-2018-3646 should no longer appear in the host Summary tabs.

Configuration of VMware Round Robin Path Selection Policy IOPS Limit

Hitachi best practices show that performance and total IOPS throughput can be increased by 3-5 percent on Hitachi Virtual Storage Platform by setting the IOPS limit for the VMware Round Robin Path Selection Policy (RR PSP) from the default value of 1,000 to 20. This causes ESXi to switch to the next available path for a LUN after 20 IO instead of after 1,000 IO. This setting is configurable via ESXCLI on a host-by-host basis, or PowerCLI may be used to apply this setting across multiple hosts in a cluster.

Change the Round Robin Path Selection Policy through PowerCLI for Multiple Hosts in a Cluster

This method will allow you to configure the RR PSP IOPS limit through PowerCLI on a per-cluster basis within your environment. Perform the following steps to change the IOPS limit value from 1,000 to 20 on all Hitachi-presented LUNs.

To change the round robin path selection policy through PowerCLI for multiple hosts in a cluster, follow these steps:

1. Open a Windows PowerShell command window as Administrator and connect to your vCenter server managing the cluster to be modified with the "**Connect-VIServer**" cmdlet.



2. Create a variable which will contain all of the ESXi hosts within the cluster you are targeting. In the example shown below, we are creating a variable named "UCSHosts" which contains the host objects within the cluster G1500-6.7 by running the PowerShell command "**\$UCSHosts = Get-Cluster "G1500-6.7" | Get-VMHost**". Replace G1500-6.7 with the name of the cluster you are targeting.

Z Administrator: Windows PowerShell	_	×
PS C:\Windows\System32> \$UCSHosts = Get-Cluster "G1500-6.7" Get-VMHost PS C:\Windows\System32> _		^
		~

3. To verify that the UCSHosts variable contains the host objects within your cluster, you may issue the command "**echo \$UCSHosts**". You should see your individual hosts listed in the PowerShell output similar to what is shown below.
| 🗵 Administrator: Windo | ows PowerShell | | | | | | _ | | × |
|--|------------------------|------------------------|----------|--------------|----------------|-----------------|--------------------|----------------|---|
| PS C:\Windows\System | 32> echo \$UCSHos | ts | | | | | | | |
| Name | ConnectionState | PowerState | NumCpu | CpuUsageMhz | CpuTotalMhz | MemoryUsageGB | MemoryTotalGB | Version | |
| esxi-5.hvcs.cisco
esxi-6.hvcs.cisco | Connected
Connected | PoweredOn
PoweredOn | 16
16 | 1489
1908 | 33584
33584 | 7.688
33.910 | 255.660
255.660 | 6.7.0
6.7.0 | |
| PS C:\Windows\System | 32> _ | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | |

4. To list all Hitachi LUNs presented to the cluster hosts and show the current RR PSP IOPS limit, you may issue the command "foreach (\$UCS in \$UCSHosts) {Get-VMHost \$UCS | Get-ScsiLun -LunType Disk | Where-Object {\$_.CanonicalName -like 'naa.60060e80*' -and \$_.MultiPathPolicy -like 'RoundRobin'} | Select-Object VMHost, CanonicalName, MultipathPolicy, CommandsToSwitchPath}". Note that we are filtering on the wildcarded NAA ID "naa.60060e80*" so that only Hitachi-presented LUNs are listed in the output, which should look similar to what is shown below.

🔀 Administrator: Windov	vs PowerShell			_		×
PS C:\Windows\System3 icalName -like 'naa.6 thPolicy, CommandsToS	<pre>2> foreach (\$UCS in \$UCSHosts) {Get-VI 0060e80*' -and \$MultiPathPolicy -lil witchPath}</pre>	MHost \$UCS Get ke 'RoundRobin'}	-ScsiLun -LunType Disk Select-Object VMHost,	Where-Object CanonicalName	{\$Car , Multi	ion i pa
/MHost	CanonicalName	MultipathPolicy	CommandsToSwitchPath			
ssri-5. hvcs. cisco. com ssri-5. hvcs. cisco. com ssri-5. hvcs. cisco. com ssri-5. hvcs. cisco. com ssri-6. hvcs. cisco. com	naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000024 naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000025 naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000025 naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000002d naa. 60060e80075624000030562400000024 naa. 60060e80075624000030562400000026 naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000002d naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000002d naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000002d naa. 60060e8007562400003056240000002d naa. 60060e80075624000030562400000031 naa. 60060e80075624000030562400000032	RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin RoundRobin	1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 1000 100			
C:\Windows\System3	2> _					

5. To set the RR PSP IOPS limit to 20 on all Hitachi LUNs presented to the cluster hosts, you may issue the command "foreach (\$UCS in \$UCSHosts) {Get-VMHost \$UCS | Get-ScsiLun -LunType Disk | Where-Object {\$_.CanonicalName -like 'naa.60060e80*' -and \$_.MultipathPolicy -like 'RoundRobin'} | Set-ScsiLun -CommandsToSwitchPath 20 | SelectObject VMHost, CanonicalName, CommandsToSwitchPath}". You should see the CommandsToSwitchPath item change to 20 for each Hitachi-presented LUN, similar to the output shown below.

🔰 Administrator: Windov	vs PowerShell		_		×
PS C:\Windows\System3 icalName -like 'naa.6 t-Object VMHost, Cano	2> foreach (\$UCS in \$UCSHosts) {Get 0060e80*' -and \$MultipathPolicy - nicalName, CommandsToSwitchPath}	-Whost \$UCS Get-ScsiLun -LunType Disk like 'RoundRobin'} Set-ScsiLun -CommandsT	Where-Object oSwitchPath	{ <mark>\$</mark> 20	Canon Selec
VMHost	CanonicalName	CommandsToSwitchPath			
<pre> esxi-5. hvcs. cisco.com esxi-5. hvcs. cisco.com esxi-5. hvcs. cisco.com esxi-5. hvcs.cisco.com esxi-6. hvcs.cisco.com esxi-6. hvcs.cisco.com esxi-6. hvcs.cisco.com esxi-6. hvcs.cisco.com esxi-6. hvcs.cisco.com PS C:\Windows\System3</pre>	naa. 60060e80075 624000305 624000000 naa. 60060e80075 6240000305 624000000	24 20 25 20 26 20 32 20 24 20 26 20 26 20 26 20 26 20 20 23 20 26 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20 20			

6. Repeat steps 1-5 for each cluster that you would like to change the VMware Round Robin Path Selection Policy IOPS limit.

Change the Round Robin Path Selection Policy through ESXCLI for a Single Host

This method will allow you to configure the RR PSP IOPS limit through ESXCLI on a per-host basis within your environment. Perform the following steps to change the IOPS limit value from 1,000 to 20 on all Hitachi-presented LUNs.

To change the round robin path selection policy through ESXCLI for a single host, follow these steps:

- 1. Enable ESXi shell and/or SSH for the host to be configured. Follow the instructions in <u>VMware KB 2004746</u> if not already enabled in your environment and login to the ESXi shell either locally on the host or through SSH.
- 2. To list all Hitachi LUNs presented to the cluster hosts and show the current RR PSP IOPS limit, you may issue the command "esxcli storage nmp device list | grep HITACHI -A4 -B1". This will show all Hitachi-presented LUNs and the current Path Selection Policy Device Config which includes the IOPS limit, as shown in the example below.

P 10.1.168.25 - PuTTY	-		×
			~
naa.60060e80075624000030562400000025			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e80075624000030562400000025)			
Storage Array Type: VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops,iops=1000,bytes=10485760,useAN0=0; las	:PathIn	idex=1:	N
umIOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002b			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002b)			
Storage Array Type: VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops,iops=1000,bytes=10485760,useANO=0; las	:PathIn	idex=0:	N
umIOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002d			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002d)			
Storage Array Type: VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops,iops=1000,bytes=10485760,useANO=0; las	:PathIn	idex=2:	N
umIOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
naa.60060e80075624000030562400000032			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e8007562400003056240000032)			
Storage Array Type: VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnketryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=lops,lops=1000 bytes=10485760,useANO=0; las	:PathIn	dex=2:	N
umiOspending=0, numBytesPending=0}			
[rootgesx1-5:~]			× 1

3. To set the RR PSP IOPS limit to 20 on all Hitachi LUNs presented to the host, you may issue the command "for i in `esxcfg-scsidevs -c | awk '{print \$1}' | grep naa.60060e80`; do esxcli storage nmp psp roundrobin deviceconfig set -- type=iops --iops=20 --device=\$i; done" as shown in the example shown below.



4. Run the command "esxcli storage nmp device list | grep HITACHI -A4 -B1" and ensure the IOPS limit has changed to 20 for Hitachi-presented LUNs as shown in the example below.

P 10.1.168.25 - PuTTY	_		×
			~
naa.60060e80075624000030562400000025			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e80075624000030562400000025)			
Storage Array Type: VMW SATP DEFAULT AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW PSP RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops,iops=20,bytes=10485760,useANO=0; lastPa	thInd	ex=0:	Num
IOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002b			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002b)			
Storage Array Type: VMW SATP DEFAULT AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops,iops=20,bytes=10485760,useANO=0; lastPa	thInd	ex=1:	Num
IOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002d			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e8007562400003056240000002d)			
Storage Array Type: VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops,iops=20,bytes=10485760,useANO=0; lastPa	thInd	ex=1:	Num
IOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
naa.60060e80075624000030562400000032			
Device Display Name: HITACHI Fibre Channel Disk (naa.60060e80075624000030562400000032)			
Storage Array Type: VMW_SATP_DEFAULT_AA			
Storage Array Type Device Config: {action_OnRetryErrors=off}			
Path Selection Policy: VMW_PSP_RR			
Path Selection Policy Device Config: {policy=iops <mark>lops=20</mark> bytes=10485760,useANO=0; lastPa	thInd	ex=0:	Num
IOsPending=0,numBytesPending=0}			
[root@esxi-5:~]			\sim

5. Repeat steps 1-4 on each host that you would like to change the VMware Round Robin Path Selection Policy IOPS limit.

Cisco Intersight Registration

Cisco Intersight gives manageability and visibility to multiple UCS domains through a common interface, regardless of location. The Base addition is available for UCSM starting at release 3.2(1) at no additional cost.

To add the Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects into Intersight, follow these steps:

1. Connect to https://www.intersight.com.

			🌐 English
IN7	FERSI	GHT	
Cisco ID	Single S	Sign-On (SSO) ①	
If you do not ha create one here	ve a Cisco ID, Enter ema	ail	
Sign in with Cis	co ID Sign In v	with SSO	
	Don't have an Intersight Account? Create a	in account	and de la
a the second of the second	- and a could		10 - 11 y
	Learn more about Cisco Intersight at Hel	p Center	
© 2017-2019 Cisco Systems, System			

Prerequisites

The following prerequisites are necessary to setup access to Cisco Intersight:

- 1. An account on **cisco.com**.
- A valid Cisco Intersight account. This can be created by navigating to https://intersight.com and following the instructions for creating an account. The account creation requires at least one device to be registered in Intersight and requires Device ID and Claim ID information from the device. See Collecting Information From Cisco UCS Domain for an example of how to get Device ID and Claim ID information from the device. See Collecting Information From Cisco UCS Domain for an example of how to get Device ID and Claim ID information from the device. See Collecting Information From Cisco UCS Domain for an example of how to get Device ID and Claim ID from Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnect devices.
- 3. Valid License on Cisco Intersight see the Cisco Intersight Licensing section for more information.
- 4. Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects must be able to do a DNS lookup to access Cisco Intersight.
- 5. Device Connectors on Fabric Interconnects must be able to resolve *svc.ucs-connect.com*.
- 6. Allow outbound HTTPS connections (port 443) initiated from the Device Connectors on Fabric Interconnects to Cisco Intersight. HTTP Proxy is supported.

Setup Information

To setup access to Cisco Intersight, the following information must be collected from the Cisco UCS Domain. The deployment steps provided below will show how to collect this information.

- Device ID
- Claim Code

Cisco Intersight Licensing

Cisco Intersight is offered in two editions:

- Base license which is free to use, and offers a large variety of monitoring, inventory and reporting features.
- Essentials license, at an added cost but provides advanced monitoring, server policy and profile configuration, firmware management, virtual KVM features, and more. A 90-day trial of the Essentials license is available for use as an evaluation period.

New features and capabilities will be added to the different licensing tiers in future release.

Deployment Steps

To setup access to Cisco Intersight from a Cisco UCS domain, complete the steps outlined in this section.

Connect to Cisco Intersight

To connect and access Cisco Intersight, follow these steps:

1. Use a web browser to navigate to Cisco Intersight at https://intersight.com/.



2. Login with a valid cisco.com account or single sign-on using your corporate authentication.

Collect Information from UCS Domain

To collect information from Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects to setup access to Cisco Intersight, follow these steps:

- 1. Use a web browser to navigate to the UCS Manager GUI. Login using the admin account.
- 2. From the navigation menu, select the **Admin** icon.
- 3. Select All > Device Connector.
- 4. From the Intersight Management pane, click Enabled to enable Intersight management.

uluulu cisco	UCS Manager	
æ	Device Connector	Device Connector
8	Device Connector	The Device Connector is an embedded management controller that enables the capabilities of Cisco Intersight, a cloud-based management platform. For detailed information about configuring the device connector, please visit Help Center.
윪		Intersight Management Connection
I		Enabled C Status A Not Claimed Device ID FD021520JED&FD021520JQP
Q		When this option is enabled, you can claim this system and leverage the cavabilities of Cloco Intervisht Claim Code Claim
=		If disabled, no communication will be allowed to Clisco Intersignt.
		Agent Version 1.0.9-2484

- 5. From the **Connection** pane, copy the **Device ID** and **Claim ID** information. This information will be required to add this device to Cisco Intersight.
- 6. (Optional) Click Settings to change Access Mode and to configure HTTPS Proxy.

Add Cisco UCS Domain to Cisco Intersight

To add Cisco UCS Fabric Interconnects to Cisco Intersight to manage the UCS domain, follow these steps:

- 1. From Cisco Intersight, in the navigation menu, select **Devices**.
- 2. Click Claim a New Device.
- 3. In the **Claim a New Device** pop-up window, paste the **Device ID** and **Claim Code** collected in the previous section.

=	Device Claim		۵	ß	ھ ھ	0	Ramesh Isaac 🖉
000 Dashboards	New features have recently been added! Learn More						×
Servers							
🛞 HyperFlex Clusters							
🚍 Fabric Interconnects							
👸 Service Profiles							
Policies							
A							
sga Devices							
1							
	Claim a New	Device					
		e, you must have the Device ID and Claim Code.					
	Device ID * FD021520JED&	-D021520JQP					
	OF92746DB94F						
		Cancel					

4. Click Claim.

On Cisco Intersight, the newly added UCS domain should now have a **Status** of **Connected**.

On Cisco UCS Manager, the **Device Connector** should now have a **Status** of **Claimed**.

The Dashboard will present an overview of the managed UCS domains:



About the Authors

Ramesh Isaac, Technical Marketing Engineer, Cisco Systems, Inc.

Ramesh Isaac is a Technical Marketing Engineer in the Cisco UCS Data Center Solutions Group. Ramesh has worked in the data center and mixed-use lab settings since 1995. He started in information technology supporting UNIX environments and focused on designing and implementing multi-tenant virtualization solutions in Cisco labs before entering Technical Marketing where he has supported converged infrastructure and virtual services as part of solution offerings as Cisco. Ramesh has certifications from Cisco, VMware, and Red Hat.

Tim Darnell, Master Solutions Architect and Product Owner, Hitachi Vantara

Tim Darnell is a Master Solutions Architect and Product Owner in the Hitachi Vantara Converged Product Engineering Group. Tim has worked on data center and virtualization technologies since 1997. He started his career in systems administration and has worked in a multitude of roles since, from technical reference authoring to consulting in large, multi-national corporations as a technical advisor. He is currently a Product Owner at Hitachi Vantara, responsible for the Unified Compute Platform Converged Infrastructure line of products that focus on VMware vSphere product line integrations. Tim holds multiple VCAP and VCP certifications from VMware and is a RedHat Certified Engineer.

Appendix: References

Cisco

Nexus vPC Best Practices:

https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/td/docs/switches/datacenter/sw/design/vpc_design/vpc_best_practices_design_guide. pdf

Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide, Release 7.x: https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/td/docs/switches/datacenter/nexus9000/sw/7x/interfaces/configuration/guide/b Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Interfaces Configuration Guide 7x.html

Cisco UCS Best Practices: <u>https://www.cisco.com/c/en/us/products/collateral/servers-unified-computing/ucs-manager/whitepaper_c11-697337.html</u>

Cisco UCS Performance and Tuning: <u>https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/products/collateral/servers-unified-computing/ucs-b-series-blade-servers/whitepaper_c11-740098.pdf</u>

Cisco UCS 6454 Spec Sheet <u>https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/products/collateral/servers-unified-computing/ucs-b-series-blade-servers/ucs-6454-fab-int-specsheet.pdf</u>

Cisco UCS 6300 Spec Sheet <u>https://www.cisco.com/c/dam/en/us/products/collateral/servers-unified-computing/ucs-b-series-blade-servers/6332-specsheet.pdf</u>

Hitachi

Hitachi Provisioning Guide for VSP G130, G/F350, G/F370, G/F700, G/F900: https://knowledge.hitachivantara.com/@api/deki/files/55795/SVOS_RF_v8_3_1_Provisioning_Guide_VSP_Gxoo_Fxoo_MK-97HM85026-03.pdf?revision=1

Hitachi Provisioning Guide for Open Systems for VSP G1xoo and F1500: https://knowledge.hitachivantara.com/@api/deki/files/50437/SVOS_RF_v8_3_Provisioning_Guide_VSP_G1xoo_F1500_MK-92RD8014-20.pdf?revision=1

Appendix: Bill of Materials

Bill of Materials

For each design tested in this solution, a bill of materials (BOM) was generated. Please note that the following are not included in the BOMs below and will need to be identified separately depending on your specific configuration:

- Racks for both Cisco and Hitachi components
- Power distribution units (PDUs)
- Multi-mode Fibre (MMF) cabling between Cisco Fabric Interconnects and Hitachi VSP storage systems
- Power cables and rail kits for Hitachi VSP storage systems
- Services, Maintenance, and Support plans for each component

The BOMs below are representative of the equipment used in Cisco Systems lab environments to certify each design. Components, interconnect cabling, and quantities may differ depending on your specific configuration needs. It is important to note that any component changes must be referenced against both Cisco and Hitachi compatibility matrices to ensure proper support is available.

Table 17 lists the BOM for Cisco UCS 6454 Fabric Interconnect with Hitachi VSP G370 design.

Vendor	Part Number/Order Code	Description	Quantity
Cisco	N9K-C9336C-FX2	Nexus 9300 Series, 36p 40/100G QSFP28	2
Cisco	NXOS-9.2.2	Nexus 9500, 9300, 3000 Base NX-OS Software Rel 9.2.2	2
Cisco	N3K-C3064-ACC-KIT	Nexus 3K/9K Fixed Accessory Kit	2
Cisco	NXA-PAC-1100W-PE2	Nexus AC 1100W PSU - Port Side Exhaust	4
Cisco	NXA-FAN-65CFM-PE	Nexus Fan, 65CFM, port side exhaust airflow	6
Cisco	CAB-9K12A-NA	Power Cord, 125VAC 13A NEMA 5-15 Plug, North America	4
Cisco	QSFP-100G-AOC1M	100GBASE QSFP Active Optical Cable, 1m	4
Cisco	QSFP-40G-SR-BD	QSFP4oG BiDi Short-reach Transceiver	4
Cisco	QSFP-H40G-CU1M	40GBASE-CR4 Passive Copper Cable, 1m	2
Cisco	UCS-FI-6454-U	UCS Fabric Interconnect 6454	2
Cisco	N10-MGT016	UCS Manager v4.o	2
Cisco	UCS-ACC-6332	UCS 6332/ 6454 Chassis Accessory Kit	2
Cisco	UCS-FAN-6332	UCS 6332/ 6454 Fan Module	8
Cisco	UCS-PSU-6332-AC	UCS 6332 Power Supply/100-240VAC	4

Table 17 Bill of Materials for Direct Attached UCS 6454 and Hitachi VSP G370 Design

Vendor	Part Number/Order Code	Description	Quantity
Cisco	CAB-9K12A-NA	Power Cord, 125VAC 13A NEMA 5-15 Plug, North America	4
Cisco	SFP-H10GB-CU2-5M	10GBASE-CU SFP+ Cable 2.5 Meter	8
Cisco	UCSB-5108-AC2-UPG	UCS 5108 Blade Server AC2 Chassis/o PSU/8 fans/o FEX	1
Cisco	N20-FW016	UCS 5108 Blade Chassis FW Package 4.0	1
Cisco	N20-FAN5	Fan module for UCS 5108	8
Cisco	N01-UAC1	Single phase AC power module for UCS 5108	1
Cisco	N20-CBLKB1	Blade slot blanking panel for UCS 5108/single slot	4
Cisco	N20-CAK	Accessory kit for UCS 5108 Blade Server Chassis	1
Cisco	UCSB-B200-M5	UCS B200 M5 Blade w/o CPU, mem, HDD, mezz	4
Cisco	UCS-CPU-6140	2.3 GHz 6140/140W 18C/24.75MB Cache/DDR4 2666MHz	8
Cisco	UCSB-MLOM-40G-04	Cisco UCS VIC 1440 modular LOM for Blade Servers	4
Cisco	UCS-SID-INFR-OI	Other Infrastructure	4
Cisco	UCSB-HS-M5-R	CPU Heat Sink for UCS B-Series M5 CPU socket (Rear)	4
Cisco	UCSB-LSTOR-BK	FlexStorage blanking panels w/o controller, w/o drive bays	8
Cisco	UCSB-HS-M5-F	CPU Heat Sink for UCS B-Series M5 CPU socket (Front)	4
Cisco	UCS-SID-WKL-OW	Other Workload	4
Cisco	UCS-IOM-2208XP	UCS 2208XP I/O Module (8 External, 32 Internal 10Gb Ports)	2
Cisco	UCSB-PSU-2500ACDV	2500W Platinum AC Hot Plug Power Supply - DV	4
Cisco	UCSB-5108-PKG-HW	UCS 5108 Packaging for chassis with half width blades.	1
Cisco	CAB-US515P-C19-US	NEMA 5-15 to IEC-C19 13ft US	4
Cisco	UCS-MR-X32G2RS-H	32GB DDR4-2666-MHz RDIMM/PC4-21300/dual rank/x4/1.2v	48
Cisco	UCS-DIMM-BLK	UCS DIMM Blanks	48
Cisco	DS-SFP-FC32G-SW	32 Gbps Fibre Channel SW SFP+, LC	8
Hitachi	VSP-G-SOLUTION.S	VSP G Unified Platform	1
Hitachi	VSP-G370-A0008.S	VSP G370 Covered Product Unified (FC/iSCSI)	1
Hitachi	G370-F-BASE-S.P	VSP G370 Foundation Base Package	1
Hitachi	GXXo-4X1R9TB.P	VSP GXXo Flash Pack 4 x 1.9TB SSD Package	12
Hitachi	VSP-G370-A0001.S	VSP G370 Product Unified (FC/iSCSI)	1

Vendor	Part Number/Order Code	Description	Quantity
Hitachi	FD221577-001.P	SVP Bezel ASM (including brackets)	1
Hitachi	HDW2-F850-1PS32.P	VSP G SFP for 32Gbps Shortwave	16
Hitachi	HDW2-F850-DBSC.P	VSP G/F XXo Drive Box (SFF)	1
Hitachi	HDW-F850-SCQ1.P	VSP G SAS Cable 1m	2
Hitachi	HDW2-F850-SVP.P	VSP G/FXXo SVP - Service Processor	1
Hitachi	HDW2-F850-4HF32R.P	VSP G/FXXo Host I/O Module FC 16/32G 4port	4

Appendix: Nexus A Configuration Example

```
version 7.0(3)I7(5a) Bios:version 05.31
switchname AA19-9336-1
vdc AA19-9336-1 id 1
 limit-resource vlan minimum 16 maximum 4094
  limit-resource vrf minimum 2 maximum 4096
  limit-resource port-channel minimum 0 maximum 511
  limit-resource u4route-mem minimum 248 maximum 248
  limit-resource u6route-mem minimum 96 maximum 96
  limit-resource m4route-mem minimum 58 maximum 58
  limit-resource m6route-mem minimum 8 maximum 8
cfs eth distribute
feature interface-vlan
feature hsrp
feature lacp
feature vpc
username admin password 5 $5$wsy2Bp4V$stK.pozTENuOUwnW8Y0/TMGz/CauQYUfwlxBR2EugI7 role network-admin
ip domain-lookup
system default switchport
copp profile strict
snmp-server user admin network-admin auth md5 0xba69923b15f9f03d162b30bb91e7785b priv
0xba69923b15f9f03d162b30bb91e7785b localizedkey
rmon event 1 description FATAL(1) owner PMON@FATAL
rmon event 2 description CRITICAL(2) owner PMON@CRITICAL
rmon event 3 description ERROR(3) owner PMON@ERROR
rmon event 4 description WARNING(4) owner PMON@WARNING
rmon event 5 description INFORMATION(5) owner PMON@INFO
ntp server 192.168.168.254 use-vrf management
ntp source 10.1.168.1
ntp master 3
ip route 0.0.0.0/0 10.1.168.254
vlan 1-2,119,201-203,1000
vlan 2
 name Native
vlan 119
 name IB-MGMT
vlan 201
 name Web
vlan 202
  name App
vlan 203
  name DB
vlan 1000
 name vMotion
spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default
spanning-tree port type edge bpdufilter default
spanning-tree port type network default
vrf context management
 ip route 0.0.0.0/0 192.168.168.254
port-channel load-balance src-dst l4port
vpc domain 10
 peer-switch
  role priority 10
  peer-keepalive destination 192.168.168.14 source 192.168.168.13
  delay restore 150
  peer-gateway
  auto-recovery
  ip arp synchronize
interface Vlan1
```

interface Vlan119 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 10.1.168.2/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 19 preempt ip 10.1.168.1 interface Vlan201 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 172.18.101.252/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 101 preempt priority 105 ip 172.18.101.254 interface Vlan202 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 172.18.102.252/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 102 preempt ip 172.18.102.254 interface Vlan203 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 172.18.103.252/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 103 preempt priority 105 ip 172.18.103.254 interface port-channel11 description vPC peer-link switchport mode trunk switchport trunk native vlan 2 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000 spanning-tree port type network vpc peer-link interface port-channel15 description vPC UCS 6454-1 FI switchport mode trunk switchport trunk native vlan 2 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000 spanning-tree port type edge trunk mtu 9216 load-interval counter 3 60 vpc 15 interface port-channel16 description vPC UCS 6454-2 FI switchport mode trunk switchport trunk native vlan 2 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000 spanning-tree port type edge trunk mtu 9216 load-interval counter 3 60 vpc 16 interface port-channel135 description vPC Upstream Network Switch A interface port-channel136 description vPC Upstream Network Switch B

```
switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
  vpc 136
interface Ethernet1/1
  description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-2 Ethernet1/1
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
  channel-group 11 mode active
interface Ethernet1/2
  description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-2 Ethernet1/2 \,
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
  channel-group 11 mode active
interface Ethernet1/5
  description vPC 15 connection to UCS 6454-1 FI Ethernet1/53
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
 mtu 9216
  load-interval counter 3 60
  channel-group 15 mode active
interface Ethernet1/6
  description vPC 16 connection to UCS 6454-2 FI Ethernet1/53
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
  mtu 9216
  load-interval counter 3 60
  channel-group 16 mode active
interface Ethernet1/7
interface Ethernet1/8
interface Ethernet1/9
interface Ethernet1/10
interface Ethernet1/11
interface Ethernet1/12
interface Ethernet1/13
interface Ethernet1/14
interface Ethernet1/15
interface Ethernet1/16
interface Ethernet1/17
interface Ethernet1/18
interface Ethernet1/19
interface Ethernet1/20
interface Ethernet1/21
interface Ethernet1/22
interface Ethernet1/23
```

```
interface Ethernet1/24
interface Ethernet1/25
interface Ethernet1/26
interface Ethernet1/27
interface Ethernet1/28
interface Ethernet1/29
interface Ethernet1/30
interface Ethernet1/31
interface Ethernet1/32
interface Ethernet1/33
interface Ethernet1/34
interface Ethernet1/35
 description vPC 135 connection to Upstream Network Switch A
 switchport mode trunk
 switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
 channel-group 135 mode active
interface Ethernet1/36
 description vPC 136 connection to Upstream Network Switch B
 switchport mode trunk
 switchport trunk native vlan 2
 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
 channel-group 136 mode active
interface mgmt0
 vrf member management
  ip address 192.168.168.13/24
line console
line vty
boot nxos bootflash:/nxos.7.0.3.17.5a.bin
no system default switchport shutdown
```

Appendix: Nexus B Configuration Example

```
version 7.0(3)I7(5a) Bios:version 05.31
switchname AA19-9336-2
vdc AA19-9336-2 id 1
 limit-resource vlan minimum 16 maximum 4094
  limit-resource vrf minimum 2 maximum 4096
  limit-resource port-channel minimum 0 maximum 511
  limit-resource u4route-mem minimum 248 maximum 248
  limit-resource u6route-mem minimum 96 maximum 96
  limit-resource m4route-mem minimum 58 maximum 58
  limit-resource m6route-mem minimum 8 maximum 8
cfs eth distribute
feature interface-vlan
feature hsrp
feature lacp
feature vpc
username admin password 5 $5$c0qohGBw$09At8vxbCEsH8R6nXJhJe0AAE83XfK1rQHZ9/Stq6x1 role network-admin
ip domain-lookup
system default switchport
copp profile strict
snmp-server user admin network-admin auth md5 0x3aca90a8ed874105ac3e972e2b7d68fe priv
0x3aca90a8ed874105ac3e972e2b7d68fe localizedkey
rmon event 1 description FATAL(1) owner PMON@FATAL
rmon event 2 description CRITICAL(2) owner PMON@CRITICAL
rmon event 3 description ERROR(3) owner PMON@ERROR
rmon event 4 description WARNING(4) owner PMON@WARNING
rmon event 5 description INFORMATION(5) owner PMON@INFO
ntp server 192.168.168.254 use-vrf management
ntp source 10.1.168.1
ntp master 3
ip route 0.0.0.0/0 10.1.168.254
vlan 1-2,119,201-203,1000
vlan 2
 name Native
vlan 119
 name IB-MGMT
vlan 201
 name Web
vlan 202
  name App
vlan 203
  name DB
vlan 1000
 name vMotion
spanning-tree port type edge bpduguard default
spanning-tree port type edge bpdufilter default
spanning-tree port type network default
vrf context management
 ip route 0.0.0.0/0 192.168.168.254
port-channel load-balance src-dst l4port
vpc domain 10
 peer-switch
  role priority 20
  peer-keepalive destination 192.168.168.13 source 192.168.168.14
  delay restore 150
  peer-gateway
  auto-recovery
  ip arp synchronize
interface Vlan1
```

interface Vlan119 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 10.1.168.3/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 19 preempt priority 105 ip 10.1.168.1 interface Vlan201 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 172.18.101.253/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 101 preempt ip 172.18.101.254 interface Vlan202 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 172.18.102.253/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 102 preempt priority 105 ip 172.18.102.254 interface Vlan203 no shutdown no ip redirects ip address 172.18.103.253/24 no ipv6 redirects hsrp 103 preempt ip 172.18.103.254 interface port-channel11 description vPC peer-link switchport mode trunk switchport trunk native vlan 2 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000 spanning-tree port type network vpc peer-link interface port-channel15 description vPC UCS 6454-1 FI switchport mode trunk switchport trunk native vlan 2 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000 spanning-tree port type edge trunk mtu 9216 load-interval counter 3 60 vpc 15 interface port-channel16 description vPC UCS 6454-2 FI switchport mode trunk switchport trunk native vlan 2 switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000 spanning-tree port type edge trunk mtu 9216 load-interval counter 3 60 vpc 16 interface port-channel135 description vPC Upstream Network Switch A interface port-channel136 description vPC Upstream Network Switch B

```
switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
  vpc 136
interface Ethernet1/1
  description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-1 Ethernet1/1
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
  channel-group 11 mode active
interface Ethernet1/2
  description vPC peer-link connection to AA19-9336-1 Ethernet1/2 \,
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
  channel-group 11 mode active
interface Ethernet1/5
  description vPC 15 connection to UCS 6454-1 FI Ethernet1/54
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
 mtu 9216
  load-interval counter 3 60
  channel-group 15 mode active
interface Ethernet1/6
  description vPC 16 connection to UCS 6454-2 FI Ethernet1/54
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119,201-203,1000
  mtu 9216
  load-interval counter 3 60
  channel-group 16 mode active
interface Ethernet1/7
interface Ethernet1/8
interface Ethernet1/9
interface Ethernet1/10
interface Ethernet1/11
interface Ethernet1/12
interface Ethernet1/13
interface Ethernet1/14
interface Ethernet1/15
interface Ethernet1/16
interface Ethernet1/17
interface Ethernet1/18
interface Ethernet1/19
interface Ethernet1/20
interface Ethernet1/21
interface Ethernet1/22
interface Ethernet1/23
```

```
interface Ethernet1/24
interface Ethernet1/25
interface Ethernet1/26
interface Ethernet1/27
interface Ethernet1/28
interface Ethernet1/29
interface Ethernet1/30
interface Ethernet1/31
interface Ethernet1/32
interface Ethernet1/33
interface Ethernet1/34
interface Ethernet1/35
 interface Ethernet1/35
 description vPC 135 connection to Upstream Network Switch A
 switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
 channel-group 135 mode active
interface Ethernet1/36
 description vPC 136 connection to Upstream Network Switch B
  switchport mode trunk
  switchport trunk native vlan 2
  switchport trunk allowed vlan 119
 channel-group 136 mode active
interface mgmt0
 vrf member management
  ip address 192.168.168.14/24
line console
line vty
boot nxos bootflash:/nxos.7.0.3.17.5a.bin
no system default switchport shutdown
```